



Management and Configuration Guide

ProCurve Series 8100fl Switches

www.procurve.com



ProCurve Series 8100fl Switches

February 2006
Software Release CY.02.03.0000 or Greater

Management and Configuration Guide

© Copyright 2005-2006 Hewlett-Packard Development Company, L.P. The information contained herein is subject to change without notice. All Rights Reserved.

This document contains proprietary information, which is protected by copyright. No part of this document may be photocopied, reproduced, or translated into another language without the prior written consent of Hewlett-Packard.

Publication Number

5990-8867
February 2006

Applicable Products

ProCurve Switch 8108fl	(J8727A)
ProCurve Switch 8116fl	(J8728A)

Trademark Credits

Ethernet is a registered trademark of Xerox Corporation.
Cisco® is a trademark of Cisco Systems, Inc.

Software Credits and Notices

This product includes software developed by Trimble Navigation, Ltd.

Disclaimer

The information contained in this document is subject to change without notice.

HEWLETT-PACKARD COMPANY MAKES NO WARRANTY OF ANY KIND WITH REGARD TO THIS MATERIAL, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Hewlett-Packard shall not be liable for errors contained herein or for incidental or consequential damages in connection with the furnishing, performance, or use of this material.

The only warranties for HP products and services are set forth in the express warranty statements accompanying such products and services. Nothing herein should be construed as constituting an additional warranty. HP shall not be liable for technical or editorial errors or omissions contained herein.

Hewlett-Packard assumes no responsibility for the use or reliability of its software on equipment that is not furnished by Hewlett-Packard.

Warranty

See the Customer Support/Warranty booklet included with the product.

A copy of the specific warranty terms applicable to your Hewlett-Packard products and replacement parts can be obtained from your HP Sales and Service Office or authorized dealer.

Contents

1 Getting Started

Contents	1-1
Overview.....	1-2
Conventions	1-2
Command Prompts	1-3
Screen Simulations	1-3
Related Publications	1-4
Getting Documentation From the Web	1-4
Sources for More Information	1-4
Need Only a Quick Start?.....	1-5
To Set Up and Install the Switch in Your Network	1-5

2 Using the Command Line Interface (CLI)

Contents	2-1
Accessing the CLI	2-2
CLI Access Modes	2-4
Using the CLI	2-5
CLI Editing Commands	2-5
Scrolling Down a Line or a Screen	2-7
CLI Parameter Types	2-8
Setting CLI Parameters	2-9
Getting Help with CLI Commands	2-10
Utilities and Conventions	2-11
Search Command	2-11
Entering Parameters	2-11
Address Notation	2-11
Terminating Sessions and Exiting Modes	2-11

3 File and System Management

Contents	3-1
Maintaining Configuration Files	3-2
Saving Configuration Changes	3-2
Changing Configuration Information	3-3
Displaying Configuration Information	3-3
Managing Files	3-4
Copy Command	3-4
File Management Commands	3-5
Backing Up and Restoring Files	3-7
Backing Up System Files	3-7
Backing Up and Restoring Configuration Files	3-7
Backing Up Startup Configuration	3-8
Managing System Devices and Software	3-9
Determining Software Versions	3-9
Upgrading Software	3-10
Rebooting	3-10
Managing Modules	3-11
Management Modules and File Management	3-11
Replacing Modules and Redundancy	3-11
Showing Redundancy Status	3-12
Switching Over Redundant Modules	3-12
Monitoring System Hardware	3-13
Showing Hardware Information	3-13
Showing Module Information	3-14
Showing Temperature, Fan, and Power Supply Status	3-14

4 Configuring Basic Features

Contents	4-1
Overview	4-2
Configuring Basic System Information	4-2
Setting the Management Module IP Address	4-2
Setting the System Date and Time	4-4
Setting System Parameters	4-4

Setting the Host Name	4-4
Setting System ID, Location, and Contact	4-5
Setting the Log in Banners	4-5
Configuring Terminal Services	4-6
Establishing a Telnet Connection	4-6
Configuring Terminal Line Parameters	4-6
Saving and Using the New Configuration	4-8
Configuring Port Parameters	4-9
Specifying Slot and Port Numbers	4-9
Slot Numbering	4-10
Activating or Disabling Ports	4-11
Modifying Port Speed	4-12
Modifying Port Mode	4-12
Disabling or Re-enabling Flow Control	4-12
Assigning a Description	4-13

5 Security Configuration

Contents	5-1
Overview	5-2
Configuring Passwords	5-2
Preventing Lock Outs	5-2
Specifying the CLI-level Password	5-3
Specifying Privilege Levels	5-4
Specifying Line-level Passwords	5-5
Recovering from Forgotten Passwords	5-6
Using SSH	5-8
Establishing SSH Sessions	5-8
Monitoring SSH Sessions	5-9
Using SSH and Telnet Sessions	5-10
Configuring Authentication	5-11
Configuring Authentication Method Lists	5-11
Configuring Authorization	5-12
Configuring Login Prompts	5-12
Configuring Accounting	5-13

Configuring RADIUS	5-15
Monitoring RADIUS	5-16
Configuring TACACS+	5-17
Monitoring TACACS+	5-18

6 VLAN Configuration

Contents	6-1
Overview	6-2
Layer 2 vs. Layer 3 VLANs	6-2
Ports, VLANs, and L3 Interfaces	6-3
Port-based VLANs	6-3
Explicit and Implicit VLANs	6-3
Access Ports and Trunk Ports (802.1P and 802.1Q support)	6-4
Configuring a VLAN	6-5
Creating a VLAN	6-5
Adding Ports to a VLAN	6-6
The Default VLAN and Trunk and Access Port Behavior	6-6
VLAN Nonstandard Defaults	6-6
Access Port Behavior	6-7
Trunk Port Behavior	6-7
Monitoring VLANs	6-8

7 Link Aggregation Configuration

Contents	7-1
Overview	7-2
Configuring Static Link Aggregations (LAG)	7-3
Creating a LAG	7-3
Adding Physical Ports to the LAG	7-3
Link Aggregation Port Limitations	7-3
Configuring Dynamic Link Aggregations (LACP)	7-4
Configuring Link Aggregations	7-4
Creating the Aggregation	7-5
Specifying the System	7-5

Configuring the Port	7-5
Configuring the Partner System	7-6
Configuration Restrictions	7-6
LAG and LACP Configuration Example	7-7
Monitoring LAG and LACP	7-10
Monitoring LAG Configurations	7-10
Monitoring LACP	7-14

8 QoS Configuration

Contents	8-1
Overview	8-2
Basic QoS Operation	8-2
Connecting Ingress and Egress Traffic	8-3
Using QoS Commands	8-4
Spolicy Input Commands	8-4
Spolicy Output Commands	8-4
Differentiated Class	8-5
Random Detection	8-5
Differential Class Group	8-7
Interface Commands	8-8
QoS Example	8-8

9 Spanning-Tree Operation

Contents	9-1
Overview	9-2
802.1s Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol (MSTP)	9-4
MSTP Structure	9-5
Terminology	9-6
How MSTP Operates	9-8
MST Regions	9-8
Regions, Legacy STP and RSTP Switches, and the Common Spanning Tree (CST)	9-10
MSTP Operation with 802.1Q VLANs	9-10
Operating Rules	9-11

Transitioning from STP or RSTP to MSTP	9-13
Tips for Planning an MSTP Application	9-13
Configuring MSTP	9-15
Configuring MSTP Operation Mode and Global Parameters	9-17
Configuring Basic Port Connectivity Parameters	9-19
Configuring MST Instance Parameters	9-22
Configuring MST Instance Per-Port Parameters	9-25
Enabling or Disabling Spanning Tree Operation	9-27
MSTP Show Commands and Troubleshooting	9-28
Displaying MSTP Statistics	9-28
Displaying Statistics for a Specific MST Instance	9-30
Displaying the MSTP Configuration	9-31
Displaying MAC Table Information	9-31
Operating Notes	9-32
Troubleshooting	9-32

10 Multimedia Traffic Control with IP Multicast (IGMP)

Contents	10-1
Overview	10-2
IGMP General Operation and Features	10-2
IGMP Terms	10-2
CLI: Configuring and Displaying IGMP	10-3
Enabling or Disabling IGMP	10-3
Configuring IGMP on a Per-Port Basis	10-3
IGMP Show Commands	10-6
Viewing the Current IGMP Configuration	10-6
Viewing IGMP Status	10-7
How IGMP Operates	10-8
IGMP Messages	10-9
Operating Rules	10-9
Operating Features	10-10
Operation With or Without IP Addressing	10-10
Automatic Fast-Leave IGMP	10-11
Configuring Fast-Leave IGMP	10-13

Forced Fast-Leave IGMP	10-13
Configuring Forced Fast-Leave IGMP	10-13
Using the Switch as Querier	10-14
Disabling or Re-enabling the Querier Function	10-15
Disabling or Re-enabling Data-Driven IGMP	10-16
Excluding Well-Known or Reserved Multicast Addresses from IP Multicast Filtering	10-16

11 IP Routing Configuration

Contents	11-1
Overview	11-2
Configuring IP Interfaces	11-3
Configuring IP Interfaces to Ports	11-3
Configuring IP Interfaces for a VLAN	11-3
Extending the IP Configuration	11-4
Configuring Jumbo Frames	11-5
Layer 2 Filters	11-6
Configuring Layer 2 Address and Port-to-Address Lock Filters	11-6
Layer 2 Filter Examples	11-7
Example: Address Filters	11-7
Configuring Address Resolution Protocol (ARP)	11-8
Clearing ARP Cache Entries	11-8
Configuring ARP Refresh Interval	11-8
Unresolved MAC Addresses for ARP Entries	11-9
Configuring Proxy ARP	11-9
Monitoring ARP	11-9
Configuring Basic IP Parameters	11-10
Configuring DNS Parameters	11-10
Configuring IP Services (ICMP)	11-10
Configuring IP Helper	11-10
Enabling IP Forwarding	11-11
Monitoring IP Parameters	11-11
Setting Memory Thresholds	11-13

12 RIP Configuration

Contents	12-1
Overview.....	12-2
Configuring RIP on the Switch	12-2
Enabling and Disabling RIP	12-3
Specifying the Version	12-3
Enabling Routing on a Network	12-3
Summarizing Routes	12-3
Distributing Default Information	12-3
Setting Default Metrics	12-4
Defining Administrative Distance	12-4
Filtering Updates	12-4
Limiting Updates	12-4
Limiting Paths	12-5
Filtering Networks in Updates	12-5
Redistributing Traffic from a Different Protocol	12-5
Adjusting Timers	12-5
Configuring an Interface for RIP.....	12-6
Specifying RIP Authentication	12-6
Specifying RIP Version	12-6
Enabling IP Broadcasts	12-6
Configuration Example	12-7
Related Topics	12-8

13 OSPF Configuration

Contents	13-1
Overview.....	13-2
Supported Features	13-2
Multipath Support	13-3
OSPF Areas	13-3
OSPF Routes	13-4
Configuring OSPF Router Parameters	13-5
Enabling OSPF	13-5
Setting the Router ID	13-5

Configuring OSPF Areas	13-6
Configuring Summary Ranges	13-7
Configuring Stub Areas	13-7
Configuring Stub Area Networks	13-7
Configuring Not-So-Stubby Areas (NSSA)	13-8
Enabling Authentication	13-8
Creating Virtual Links	13-9
Configuring General OSPF Parameters	13-9
Configuring the OSPF Router	13-10
Associating a Network with the OSPF Area	13-10
Distributing Default Information	13-10
Setting the Reference Bandwidth	13-10
Configuring RFC 1583 Compatibility	13-10
Logging Adjacency Changes	13-11
Redistribution	13-11
Setting Default Metric for Redistributed Routes	13-11
Configuring Shortest Path First Computation Timers	13-11
Configuring OSPF Interface Parameters	13-12
Using OSPF Authentication	13-12
Specifying the Interface Cost	13-13
Specifying Intervals	13-13
Ignoring Maximum Transmission Unit Checks	13-14
Setting the Priority Level	13-14
Suppressing Routing Updates	13-14
Alternative Area Border Router (ABR).	13-15
OSPF Configuration Example	13-16
Monitoring OSPF	13-18

14 Configuring Routing Policies

Contents	14-1
Overview.	14-2
Route Preferences.	14-2
Import Policies	14-3
Import-Source	14-3

Route-Filter	14-4
Export Policies	14-4
Export-Destination	14-4
Export-Source	14-5
Route-Filter	14-5
Authentication	14-5
Authentication Methods	14-6
Using Route Maps	14-7
Configuring Next Hop Options	14-7
Configuring Simple Routing Policies	14-8
Redistributing Static Routes	14-8
Redistributing Directly Attached Networks	14-8
Redistributing RIP into RIP	14-8
Redistributing RIP into OSPF	14-9
Redistributing OSPF to RIP	14-9

15 Access Control Lists (ACLs)

Contents	15-1
Overview	15-2
Layer 3 Access Control List (ACLs)	15-3
Creating an ACL	15-4
The “Any” Parameter and Wild Cards	15-5
How Multiple ACL Rules are Evaluated	15-6
Implicit Deny Rule	15-7
Editing ACLs	15-9
Applying ACLs	15-10
Applying ACLs to Interfaces	15-10
ACL Viewing	15-11
Layer 2 Access Control Lists (ACLs)	15-13
Layer 2 Filters	15-13
Layer 2 ACLS	15-13
Monitoring Layer 2 ACLs	15-14
Protocols and Keywords	15-15

16 VRRP Configuration

Contents	16-1
Overview.....	16-2
Configuration Parameters	16-2
Setting the IP Address of the Virtual Router	16-3
Labeling the Virtual Router	16-3
Setting the Backup Priority	16-3
Setting the Advertisement Interval	16-3
Learning the Master Configuration	16-4
Setting Pre-empt Mode	16-4
VRRP Configuration Notes	16-4
Configuring VRRP	16-6
Basic VRRP Configuration	16-6
Configuration of Router R1	16-7
Configuration for Router R2	16-7
VRRP Configuration with Two Routers	16-8
Configuration of Router R1	16-9
Configuration of Router R2	16-9
Monitoring VRRP.....	16-10

17 Time Configuration

Contents	17-1
Overview.....	17-2
Setting the Date and Time	17-2
Using NTP.....	17-3
Clock Synchronization	17-3

18 SNMP Configuration

Contents	18-1
Overview.....	18-2
Configuring Access to MIB Objects	18-3
Configuring SNMP Access	18-3
Configuring Community Strings	18-3

Configuring the SNMP Agent	18-4
Configuring SNMP Notifications	18-4
Specifying the Notification Targets	18-4
Enabling/Disabling SNMP	18-5
MIB Modules	18-6
Loading MIBs	18-7
Enabling/Disabling MIB Modules	18-8
Displaying SNMP Information	18-9
Troubleshooting SNMP	18-10
SNMP Notifications	18-11

19 Performance Monitoring

Contents	19-1
Overview	19-2
Show Commands	19-2
Debug Commands	19-5
Clear Commands	19-6
Error Reporting and Message Logging	19-7
Disabling/Enabling Message Logging	19-7
Specifying Logging Locations	19-7
Configuring the Syslog Host	19-8
Setting Source Interface for Syslog Messages	19-8
Displaying Logging Messages	19-8
Displaying Crash Log Files	19-9
Setting the Severity Level of Messages	19-9
Controlling the Size of the Log and Messages	19-10
Time-Stamping Messages	19-10
Setting Temperature Thresholds	19-10
Configuring Port Mirroring	19-11
Port Mirroring Limitations	19-11

Command Line Index

Index

Getting Started

Contents

- Overview..... 1-2
- Conventions 1-2
 - Command Prompts 1-3
 - Screen Simulations 1-3
- Related Publications 1-4
 - Getting Documentation From the Web 1-4
 - Sources for More Information 1-4
- Need Only a Quick Start?..... 1-5
 - To Set Up and Install the Switch in Your Network 1-5

Overview

This *Management and Configuration Guide* is intended for use with the following switches:

- ProCurve Switch 8108fl
- ProCurve Switch 8116fl

Note

Each device uses the same command line functions. Together, these two devices are referred to in this guide as the *8100fl switch*.

This guide describes how to use the command line interface (CLI) to configure, manage, monitor, and troubleshoot switch operation. The *Product Documentation CD-ROM* shipped with the switch includes a copy of this guide. You can also download a copy from the ProCurve Networking Web site. (See “[Getting Documentation From the Web](#)” on page 1-4, below.) For information on other product documentation for the 8100fl switch, refer to “[Related Publications](#)” on page 1-4.

Conventions

This guide uses the following conventions for displaying command syntax.

Convention	Description
boldface font	Identifies commands that you enter as shown.
<i>italic</i> font	Identifies elements for which you enter values.
screen font	Indicates text that appears on your computer screen.
[]	Identifies optional elements. Square brackets are also used to indicate default system prompts on screen.
{ x y z }	Indicates required elements of which you select one. Vertical bars () are used to separate alternative, mutually exclusive elements.
[x y z]	Indicates optional elements of which you select one.
string	Indicates that the entry is a literal set of characters.
[ctrl][Enter]	Represents a keystroke (or keystrokes) to type on your keyboard.
< >	Indicates nonprinting characters for which you enter values.

Command Prompts

The default configuration for your switch displays one of the following CLI prompts:

```
ProCurve 8108f1#  
ProCurve 8116f1#
```

To simplify recognition, this guide uses the hostname `ProCurve` to represent command prompts for both models. For example:

```
ProCurve#
```

Note

You can use the **hostname** command to change the text in the CLI prompt.

To configure an interface on the switch, you need to enter configuration mode for that interface (for example, a physical port, LAG, or VLAN). The command prompt display will vary according to the interface. Here are two examples:

```
ProCurve(config-interface-gig3/4)#  
ProCurve(config-interface-vlan701)#  
ProCurve(config-lag-13)#
```

This guide uses a generic prompt to represent commands that must be entered from an interface configuration context:

```
ProCurve(config-if)#
```

Screen Simulations

Single lines of screen text and command output are represented like this:

```
ProCurve#show running-config
```

Screens containing more than one line of text and command output are shown in table format like this:

```
ProCurve#show version  
  
ProCurve Networking Switch 8100f1 Series System Software  
Version CY.02.02.0051  
Copyright (c) 1998-2005 by ProCurve Networking.  
Compiled on Sun Jan 22 20:20:26 PST 2006  
Bootloader Version CY.02.02.0004  
Switch uptime is 18 hours, 4 minutes, 28 seconds  
...
```

Related Publications

Read Me First. The *Read Me First* shipped with your switch provides software update information, product notes, and other information. A printed copy is shipped with your switch.

Installation and Getting Started Guide. Use the *Installation and Getting Started Guide* shipped with your switch to prepare for and perform the physical installation. This guide steps you through connecting the switch to your network and assigning IP addressing, as well as describing the LED indications for correct operation and trouble analysis. A PDF version of this guide is also provided on the *Product Documentation CD-ROM* shipped with the switch.

Release Notes. Release notes are posted on the ProCurve Networking Web site and provide information on new software updates:

- New features and how to configure and use them
- Software management, including downloading software to the switch
- Software fixes addressed in current and previous releases

Getting Documentation From the Web

To download the latest version of documentation for your switch:

1. Go to the ProCurve Networking Web site at <http://www.procurve.com>.
2. Click on **technical support**.
3. Click on **product manuals**.
4. Click on the **ProCurve Switch 8100fl series** link to view or download the most recent manuals and release notes for this product.

Sources for More Information

- For more information on a specific command in the CLI, type the command name followed by “?” or use the [Tab] key (see [“Getting Help with CLI Commands” on page 2-10](#) for details).
- For more information on ProCurve products and technology, visit the ProCurve Networking Web site at:
<http://www.procurve.com>

Need Only a Quick Start?

IP Addressing. If you just want to give the switch an IP address so that it can communicate on your network, ProCurve recommends that you use the CLI to quickly configure IP addressing and enable Telnet access to the switch: see [“Setting the Management Module IP Address” on page 4-2](#) for details.

Note

For an introduction and overview on using the CLI, refer to [Chapter 2, “Using the Command Line Interface \(CLI\)”](#). For instructions on setting up basic features, see [Chapter 4, “Configuring Basic Features”](#).

To Set Up and Install the Switch in Your Network

For instructions on how to physically install the switch and its components in your network, refer to the *Installation and Getting Started Guide* that shipped with your switch. This provides information on the following:

- Notes, cautions, and warnings related to installing the switch and its related modules
- Instructions for mounting the switch and physically installing its modules, fans, and power
- Procedures for setting up basic system information and passwords.
- Descriptions for interpreting LED behavior on the switch.

— *This page is intentionally unused.* —

Using the Command Line Interface (CLI)

Contents

Using the Command Line Interface (CLI)

Accessing the CLI	2-2
CLI Access Modes	2-4
Using the CLI	2-5
CLI Editing Commands	2-5
Scrolling Down a Line or a Screen	2-7
CLI Parameter Types	2-8
Setting CLI Parameters	2-9
Getting Help with CLI Commands	2-10
Utilities and Conventions	2-11
Search Command	2-11
Entering Parameters	2-11
Address Notation	2-11
Terminating Sessions and Exiting Modes	2-11

Accessing the CLI

The CLI can be accessed through both serial and Telnet connections (including Secure Shell). For initial log on, you must use a serial connection. Once an IP address is assigned to the management interface (see [“Setting the Management Module IP Address” on page 4-2](#)), you can access the CLI through a Telnet connection. For more information on using Telnet and SSH sessions, refer to [Chapter 5, “Security Configuration”](#).

When accessing the CLI through Telnet, you will be prompted for a password if one has been set via local, RADIUS, or TACACS configuration. By default, the password required is the password you enter for general access at initial setup (see [“Configuring Passwords” on page 5-2](#)). You also have the option of assigning a separate password for Privileged Exec mode access with the **enable secret** command.

Note

Up to 10 Telnet sessions can run simultaneously on the switch. *However, only one user at a time is allowed in Configuration mode.* If a second user enters the configure command, the first user will be bumped out of configuration mode and will see the following message:

```
ProCurve(config-line)#User [mgr] logged in as process [858]  
has taken control of the config session
```

```
ProCurve# ← The command line prompt reverts to Privileged Exec mode
```

All the commands that the first user entered before being bumped out of configuration mode will be saved in the running configuration.

To access the CLI:

1. Once you connect to the device, you will see the following prompt:

```
ProCurve>
```

At this prompt (>), you are at the user Exec mode of the CLI command structure. You can view system status at this level, but you do not have permission to change system configurations. To make configuration and system changes, you must be in (and have authorization to enter) the Privileged Exec mode.

Note

For more information on the CLI Access modes and permissions, see [Table 2-1 on page 2-4](#).

2. To access the Privileged Exec mode from the Exec mode, enter:

```
ProCurve>enable
```

You will be prompted for a password if one has been assigned. Otherwise, the prompt will change to the Privileged Exec mode (#):

```
ProCurve#
```

From Privileged Exec mode, you can manage system-level functions and enter Configuration mode to make configuration changes.

3. To access Configuration mode, from Privileged Exec mode enter:

```
ProCurve#configure
```

The prompt will change to Configuration mode:

```
ProCurve(config)#
```

From Configuration mode, you can reach all other configuration levels (for ports on interface modules, for specific protocols, and so on) from this mode.

Notes

The CLI supports partial matching, so you do not need to enter the entire name of a command or option.

CLI commands are not case sensitive.

To help identify the current command level or mode, the CLI prompt changes at each level of the Configuration command structure.

CLI Access Modes

The CLI has four different access modes, each of which provides the ability to perform the specific operations shown in [Table 2-1](#).

Table 2-1. CLI Access Modes

Access Mode	Command Prompt	Description
Exec	ProCurve>	<p>Provides limited access to the system. Allows you to display status, perform diagnostic operations, and power slots on and off. You can also perform basic system-level tasks such as traceroute, launch ping requests, control terminal configuration, and logout.</p> <p>The Exec mode command prompt consists of the system name, followed by the angle brackets (>). For procedures on how to change the system name using the hostname command, refer to “Setting the Log in Banners” on page 4-5.</p>
Privileged Exec	ProCurve#	<p>Allows you to manage the system. Privileged Exec mode provides more facilities than Exec mode. For example, you can display critical features such as router configuration, access control lists and SNMP statistics.</p> <p>The Exec mode command prompt consists of the system name, followed by the pound sign (#).</p> <p>To enter this mode, enter the enable command from the Exec mode, then supply a password when prompted (if password protection has been configured).</p> <p>To exit Privileged Exec mode and return to Exec mode, type disable and press [Enter].</p>
Configuration	ProCurve(config)#	<p>Allows you to configure all features and functions on the switch. These include switch configuration, access control lists, routing protocols, spanning tree configuration, and so on.</p> <p>To enter Configuration mode, first enter Privileged Exec mode (enable command or en), and then enter the configure or config command.</p>
Boot	PMOM>	<p>Certain tasks can be performed only from Boot mode. Enter the reboot command to reset the switch. If the switch still fails to boot, contact ProCurve Customer Support.</p> <p>To enter the Boot mode, boot the switch, and then interrupt the normal boot sequence by pressing the [Esc] key. (Use the spacebar to skip the countdown sequence). For information on how to upgrade the boot PMOM software and boot using the upgraded image, see “Upgrading Software” on page 3-10.</p>

Notes

The command prompt shows the hostname in front of the mode character(s). The default name is “ProCurve 8108fl” or “ProCurve 8116fl” according to model. To change the name, see [“Setting the Host Name” on page 4-4](#).

When you are in Configuration mode, use the **exit** command or press **[Ctrl][z]** to exit to the previous mode. Typing **exit** in Privileged Exec mode will quit the session entirely (see [“Terminating Sessions and Exiting Modes” on page 2-11](#)).

Using the CLI

The CLI supports partial matching (also known as command completion), so you do not need to enter the entire name of a command or option. As long as you enter enough characters of the command or option name to be unique, the CLI understands what you are typing. If you enter enough characters of a command keyword to uniquely identify it and press the **[Tab]** key, the CLI will complete the command. For example, if you enter the following in Privileged Exec mode and then press the **[Tab]** key as indicated:

```
ProCurve#show ru[Tab]
```

The CLI completes the command as follows:

```
ProCurve#show running-config
```

If you do not enter enough characters to identify a unique command, the CLI will flag the entry as an ambiguous command. For example:

```
ProCurve#show r
% Ambiguous command: "show r"
```

When you mis-enter command syntax, or enter syntax that the CLI does not recognize, the CLI will flag the syntax error with a **^** marker indicating the word where the error has occurred.

For example:

```
ProCurve#show rum
                ^
% Invalid input detected at '^' marker.
```

Use the CLI editing commands (see [Table 2-2 on page 2-6](#)) to correct the error and enter a valid command.

CLI Editing Commands

The switch provides line editing capabilities to move forward or backward on a line, delete or transpose characters, and delete portions of a line. To use the line editing commands, you need a VT-100 terminal or terminal emulator. For more information on connecting a console and configuring a terminal, refer to the *Installation and Getting Started Guide* for your switch.

To enter a line-editing command, use the **[Ctrl][key]** combination for the command by pressing and holding the **[Ctrl]** key, then pressing the letter associated with the command as detailed in the following table.

Table 2-2. CLI Line Editing Commands

Command	Resulting Action
[Ctrl] [A]	Move to beginning of line
[Ctrl] [B]	Move back one character
[Ctrl] [C]	Abort current line
[Ctrl] [D]	Delete character under cursor
[Ctrl] [E]	Move to end of line
[Ctrl] [F]	Move forward one character
[Ctrl] [G]	None
[Ctrl] [H]	Delete character just prior to the cursor
[Ctrl] [I]	Insert one space (tab substitution)
[Ctrl] [J]	Carriage return (executes command)
[Ctrl] [K]	Delete characters from cursor to end of line
[Ctrl] [L]	Refresh current line
[Ctrl] [M]	Carriage return (executes command)
[Ctrl] [N]	Next command from history buffer
[Ctrl] [O]	None
[Ctrl] [P]	Previous command from history buffer
[Ctrl] [Q]	Resume processing command
[Ctrl] [R]	Refresh current line
[Ctrl] [S]	Stop processing command
[Ctrl] [T]	Transpose character under cursor with the character just prior to the cursor
[Ctrl] [U]	Delete line from the beginning of line to cursor
[Ctrl] [V]	Follow by Ctrl-character to enter the Ctrl character.
[Ctrl] [W]	Delete one word backwards
[Ctrl] [X]	Move forward one word

Table 2-2. CLI Line Editing Commands (Continued)

Command	Resulting Action
[Ctrl] [Y]	Paste back what was deleted by the previous Ctrl-k or Ctrl-w command. Text is pasted back at the cursor location
[Ctrl] [Z]	If inside a subsystem, it exits back to the top level. If in Privileged Exec mode, it exits back to Exec mode. If in Configuration mode, it exits back to Privileged Exec mode.
[Esc] [D]	Delete characters from cursor's current location to the first blank space.
[Esc] [F]	Move forward one word
[Esc] [backspace]	Delete backwards from cursor to the previous blank space (essentially a delete-word-backward command)
[Tab]	Attempts to complete command keyword.
"<string>"	Opaque strings may be specified using double quotes. This prevents interpretation of otherwise special CLI characters.

You can also use the left and right arrow keys to move the cursor to the left and right respectively. Use the up-arrow key to scroll backwards through the previous commands entered in the current mode. Use the down-arrow key to return to the most recently entered command in the current mode.

Note

The correct use of [Ctrl][Z] is to exit a mode only. Do not use [Ctrl][Z] while a command is being processed (for example, during a **show** command). If you wish to abort a command that is in process, use [Ctrl][C], or use [Ctrl][S] to stop processing the current command.

If [Ctrl][S] is used to suspend output, use [Ctrl][Q] to resume processing the command.

Scrolling Down a Line or a Screen

When viewing some commands, the output might be longer than your screen can display. In such cases, a **--more--** prompt appears at the bottom of the screen. To display the next line, press the [Enter] key. To scroll down one full screen, press the [Spacebar]. To return to the CLI prompt, press the [q] key.

CLI Parameter Types

The following table describes all the parameter types you can use with the CLI.

Table 2-3. CLI Parameter Types

Data Type	Description	Example
conditional	A numerical conditional expression. Special symbols are used to describe a numerical condition: > (greater than), < (less than) and != (not equal to).	<1024 or >2048 or !=4096
hexadecimal	A hexadecimal number	a7 or 0xa7
hostname	Hostname of an IP host	whistler or john-pc
hostname/IP	Hostname or IP address of a host	munich or 10.43.1.4
keyword	A keyword described in the list of acceptable keywords in the online help	aggregate or individual
interface name or IP address	Name of an interface or its IP address	int1 or 10.1.4.33
IP address	An IP address of the form < x.x.x.x. >	10.1.2.3
IP address/mask	A pair of IP address and mask values. Depending on the command, the mask may be a network mask or filtering mask. The mask can be described using the traditional IP address syntax (255.0.0.0) or a CIDR syntax (/8).	10.1.4.0/255.255.255.0 or 10.1.4.0/24
IP address list	A list of IP addresses separated by spaces but enclosed in quotes.	"10.1.4.4 10.1.5.5 10.1.6.6"
MAC address	A MAC address specified in the following forms: xx:xx:xx:xx:xx:xx or xxxxxx:xxxxxx or xxxxxx-xxxxxx	08:00:50:1a:2b:c3 or 080050:1a2bc3 or aabbcc-ddeeff
number	An integer number	100
numerical range	A number or a range of numbers to denote, for example, a single vlan or a range of vlans	50 or 70-100
port	A single port	interface ethernet 1/4, (or "int et 1/4"), or int gi 2/1, or int te 4/6
slot number	A list of one or more occupied card slots in the switch	1 or 7
string	A character string. To include spaces in a string, specify the entire string in double quotes ("").	abc or "abc def"
URL	A Uniform Resource Locator. URLs using tftp or scp are supported. For example: TFTP: <i>tftp://host/pathname</i>	tftp://10.1.4.5/test/abc.txt

Setting CLI Parameters

The **terminal history** command specifies the number of commands that will be stored in the command history buffer. Commands stored in the buffer can be recalled without having to type the complete command again. When you hit the ↑ key, the CLI displays the commands that were entered, from the most recent.

To specify the number of commands stored in the command history buffer, enter the following command in Exec mode or Privileged Exec mode.

terminal history size <num> Set the size of the command history buffer

Alternatively, you can display all the commands that were executed during a CLI session. To display the CLI commands, enter the following command.

show history Display command history.

The CLI also provides commands for setting the terminal display. Use the following commands in Exec mode or Privileged Exec mode to set and display terminal settings.

Command	Task
terminal length <num>	Set the number of rows to be displayed (possible values range from 0 to 64; default is 24)
terminal width <num>	Set the number of columns to be displayed (possible values range from 24 to 256; default is 80)
show terminal	Display terminal settings
terminal history	Control command history display
terminal [no] timestamp	Print the system's time stamp for each line of display
[no] terminal monitor	Display debug output to the current line

Note

When setting the terminal length and width, you should select values that match your display window (or physical terminal) size. Selecting values outside the possible range, may cause problems with the system and the display.

When selecting terminal length, entering a value of 0 will disable the pager functionality. This will cause output that is longer than your display window to scroll off the display.

If you are using a terminal emulator that supports its own length and width settings, these may override your configuration settings.

Getting Help with CLI Commands

Interactive help is available from CLI by entering the question mark (?) character at any time. The help is context-sensitive; the help provided is based on where you are in the command. For example, if you are at the Exec mode prompt, enter a question mark (?) as shown in the following example to list the commands available in Exec mode:

```
ProCurve>?

Exec commands:
log          - Log all terminal input and output to a file
ping        - Send echo messages
show        - Show running system information
telnet      - Open a Telnet connection to another host
terminal    - Set terminal line parameter
traceroute  - Trace route to destination
-----
no          - Negate a command or set its defaults
-----
enable      - Change privilege level (turn on privileged
commands)
exit        - Exit from Exec mode
logout     - Exit from Exec mode
```

You can also type the ? character, or press the [Tab] key, while entering a command to see a description of the parameters or options that you can enter. Once the help information is displayed, the command line is redisplayed as before but without the ? character. Continue asking the CLI for help in completing a command until you have fully qualified the command. At this point, CLI help will tell you to press [Enter] (the <cr> symbol stands for carriage return—which is the [Enter] key).

The following is an example of invoking help while entering a command:

```
ProCurve(config)#router ?
  ospf - Open Shortest Path First (OSPF)
  rip   - Routing Information Protocol (RIP)
ProCurve(config)#router ospf ?
<1..65535> - Process ID
ProCurve(config)#router ospf 2 ?
<cr>
ProCurve(config)#router ospf 2
```

Utilities and Conventions

Take note of the following commands or conventions when using the CLI.

Search Command

- The **search** <WORD> command can locate strings that appear in your running configuration file. Strings can be words like `vlan`, or numbers such as `10.20.30.40`, or even a Perl-style regular expression.
- Although the search command accepts most special characters used in regular expressions, the character `"?"` is interpreted as a request for Help. That is, instead of accepting `"?"` as a search parameter, the CLI will try either to complete the command or to provide help for succeeding tokens in the command.

Entering Parameters

- When the CLI asks for a string parameter that appears in uppercase (for example, `WORD`), enter a variable (for example, `hello`). When the CLI prompts you for a parameter in lowercase, (for example, `name`), enter it as it appears (that is, `name`). It is command syntax.

Address Notation

- When you enter an IP address and subnet mask, you can enter it as either an IP address and subnet mask pair or as an IP address with CIDR notation. For example, the IP address and mask `15.127.43.21 255.255.255.0`, can also be entered as `15.127.43.21/24`.
- The switch supports subnet masking as well as inverse masks. For example, both `255.255.0.0` and `0.0.255.255` are both valid masks.

Terminating Sessions and Exiting Modes

- The switch includes the following commands that terminate your current mode level: **quit**, **end** (or `[Ctrl][Z]`), **exit**, and **logout**. [Figure 2-1](#) illustrates the actions of each of these commands.
 - The **logout** command is only available in Exec and Privileged Exec modes. Use it and the **quit** (a hidden command) or **exit** commands to disconnect the SSH or Telnet session. If you are connected directly to the console, then using the **quit**, **exit** and **logout** commands will end your session but not disconnect you.
 - The **exit** command in any sub mode of the global config mode, returns the CLI to the previous mode.

Using the Command Line Interface (CLI)

Using the CLI

- The **end** command when used at any level of the Configuration mode, returns the CLI to the Privileged Exec mode.

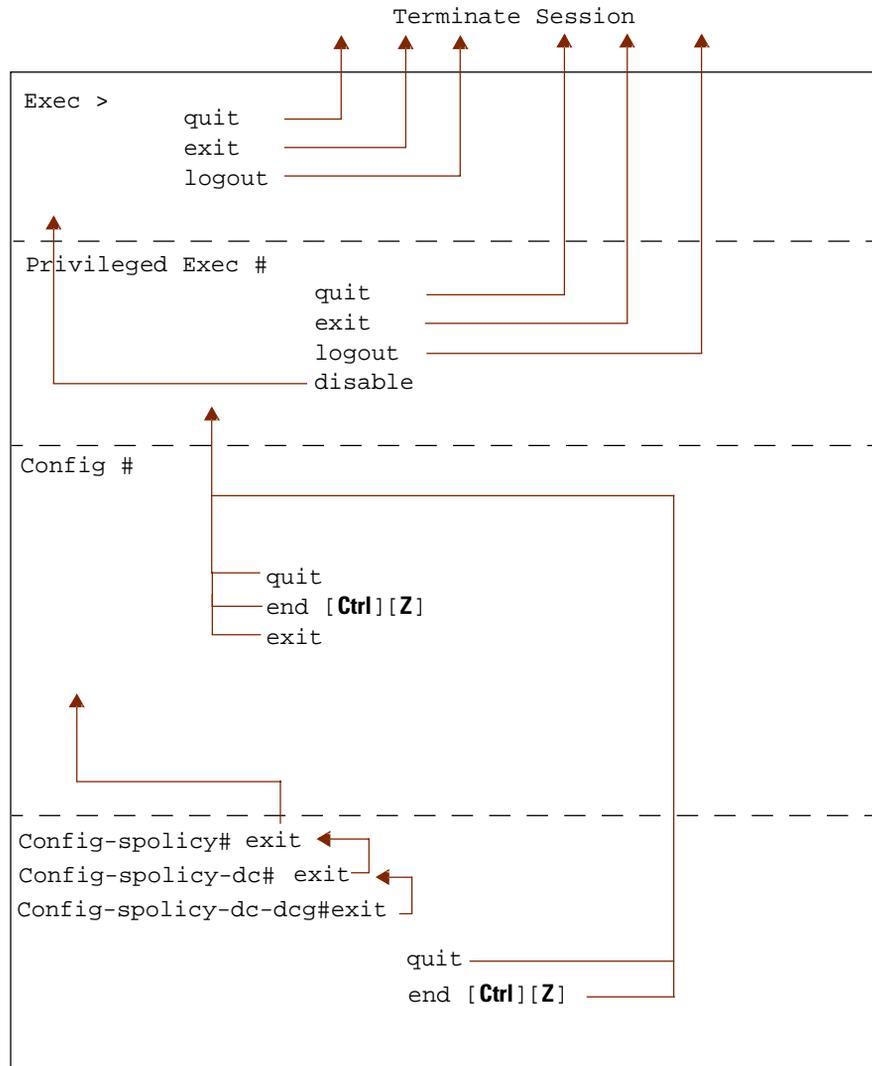


Figure 2-1. Using Terminating Commands

File and System Management

Contents

Maintaining Configuration Files	3-2
Saving Configuration Changes	3-2
Changing Configuration Information	3-3
Displaying Configuration Information	3-3
Managing Files	3-4
Copy Command	3-4
File Management Commands	3-5
Backing Up and Restoring Files	3-7
Backing Up System Files	3-7
Backing Up and Restoring Configuration Files	3-7
Backing Up Startup Configuration	3-8
Managing System Devices and Software	3-9
Determining Software Versions	3-9
Upgrading Software	3-10
Rebooting	3-10
Managing Modules	3-11
Management Modules and File Management	3-11
Replacing Modules and Redundancy	3-11
Showing Redundancy Status	3-12
Switching Over Redundant Modules	3-12
Monitoring System Hardware	3-13
Showing Hardware Information	3-13
Showing Module Information	3-14
Showing Temperature, Fan, and Power Supply Status	3-14

Maintaining Configuration Files

The 8100fl switch maintains in memory and on disk the following configuration files and commands:

- **running-config**—The running-config file includes both the startup-config file plus any configuration changes or additions that you have made entered during a CLI session.
 - The running configuration remains in effect until you power down or reboot the system.
 - A reboot deletes the current running-config file and replaces it with a copy of the startup-config file.

Caution

The running configuration remains in effect only during the current power cycle. If you power off or reboot the switch without saving the running configuration changes to the startup configuration file, the changes are discarded.

- **startup-config**—The configuration file the switch uses to configure itself when the system is powered on.
 - The startup-config remains unchanged even when the system reboots.
 - The 8100fl switch ships with a factory-default startup-config file.

Saving Configuration Changes

To save changes in the running-config into the startup configuration file (so that the switch reinstates the changes next time you reboot the software), use one of the following methods.

- Replace the startup-config file with whatever is in the running configuration by entering the **write memory** command.
- From Privileged Exec mode in the CLI, enter the following command to copy the configuration changes in the running configuration to the startup configuration:

```
ProCurve#copy running-config startup-config
```

The new configuration changes replace the startup-config file stored in the management module's boot flash.

Changing Configuration Information

The commands to change configuration information are shown in [Table 3-1](#).

Table 3-1. Commands to change configuration information

Mode	Command	Action
Privileged Exec	<code>copy <source> <destination></code>	Copy between running configuration, startup configuration, TFTP server, or URL.
Configuration	<code>write memory</code>	Save running configuration to startup configuration.

Note

The copy command can only be executed from Privileged Exec mode.

Displaying Configuration Information

The following table lists the commands that are useful for displaying the switch's configuration information. All commands can be run from either the Privileged Exec mode (`ProCurve#`) or from the Configuration mode (`ProCurve(config)#`).

Table 3-2. Commands to display configuration information

Command	Action
<code>show running-config</code>	Show running configuration of the system
<code>show startup-config</code>	Show startup configuration of the system for the next reboot

Managing Files

The 8100fl switch supports a 512 MB internal compact flash device located on the management module. This device contains the local flash storage area used to store configuration and system files.

Copy Command

[Table 3-3](#) shows the local file systems supported by the **copy** command.

Table 3-3. Local File Systems

Local File System	Description
running-config	The current running configuration on the system.
history	History of commands used in the current session.
startup-config	The configuration saved on persistent storage that the system loads when restarted.

Note

Use the prefix **flash:** to locate the local flash storage area on the system.

The following URL types are supported by the **copy** command, allowing bi-directional file transfers both on and off the system:

- tftp:—remote file accessed through the Trivial File Transfer Protocol (TFTP)
- scp:—remote file accessed through the Secure Copy Protocol (SCP).

Note

If you use SCP, the file is encrypted when copied across the network and you will be prompted for a password. In addition, the remote host must be on the SSH known hosts list (see [“Using SSH” on page 5-8](#) for details).

Table 3-4 shows syntaxes and examples for the various URL options used to perform remote file transfer.

Table 3-4. URL Syntaxes for Remote File Systems

URL	Syntaxes	Example
tftp:	tftp://location/directory/filename	tftp://10.10.10.10/filename.txt
scp:	scp://[username@]location/directory/filename When using scp you will be prompted for a password	scp://remoteuser@10.10.10.10/filename.txt remoteuser@10.10.10.10's password: *****

File Management Commands

Because the 8100fl switch allows a wide variety of file storage activities to a number of devices, it provides basic file management operations to manipulate these files. In these operations, wherever a “file” is specified, it may be specified as a URL indicating the file system. If you omit the file system, the present working directory is assumed. Use the file management commands in Privileged Exec mode to display, rename, and delete the configuration files stored on the primary management module. For a list of file management commands, see [Table 3-5 on page 3-5](#).

Note

Relative file and directory names can be used for file operations. For example, if you are in the `flash:/` directory and want to display a file named “history”, you have the option to type any of the following commands: **more history**, or **more flash:/history**, or **more flash:history** to display the file in the CLI.

Table 3-5. File Management Commands

Command	Description	Syntax
cd	The cd command changes the present working directory of a user session from one file system to another. If <i>target-file-system</i> allows subdirectories, the cd command allows users to move into those subdirectories as well. Only file systems residing on hard drives may have subdirectories. The <i>target-file-system</i> must be either a logical or physical file system; it cannot be a remote file system.	<code>cd <target-file-system></code>
pwd	The pwd command shows the user session's present working directory.	<code>pwd</code>

Table 3-5. File Management Commands (Continued)

Command	Description	Syntax
copy	<p>The copy command uses a <i>url</i> to copy a <i>source-file</i> to a <i>target-file</i>, with the following conditions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>url</i> can be used to specify any one of the following file transfer protocols: SCP or TFTP. The <i>url</i> contains protocol, server, and the complete path.• <i>source-file</i> and <i>target-file</i> cannot be identical.• The <i>target-file</i> cannot specify a read-only file system.• Both the <i>source-file</i> and <i>target-file</i> cannot specify remote file systems.	<p><code>copy <url> <source-file> <target-file></code></p> <p>or the inverse:</p> <p><code>copy <source-file> <url> <target-file></code></p>
delete	<p>The delete command removes a <i>target-file</i> from the system. The <i>target-file</i> must reside on either a logical or physical file system that is not designated read-only; it cannot reference a remote file system.</p>	<p><code>delete <target-file></code></p>
dir	<p>The dir command generates a listing of files located on <i>file-system</i>. <i>file-system</i> may be followed by a glob pattern to filter the listing for certain files. <i>file-system</i> must be either a logical or physical partition; it cannot be a remote file system.</p>	<p><code>dir <file-system></code></p>
erase	<p>The erase command removes all file entries in <i>file-system</i> or the startup-config. The <i>file-system</i> may only be <i>flash</i>:</p>	<p><code>erase [<file-system> startup-config]</code></p>
mkdir	<p>The mkdir command creates a directory on a file system. <i>directory</i> must reference a file system based on a hard disk drive. If the directory already exists, no action is taken and a warning message is produced. If the directory is a subdirectory of another directory that does not exist, no action is taken and a warning message is produced.</p>	<p><code>mkdir <directory></code></p>
more	<p>The more command displays the contents of the target file as paged output. By default, the system determines whether <i>target-file</i> is an ASCII text file or a binary file and displays the contents accordingly. The <code>/binary</code> option forces the file to be displayed as a binary file</p>	<p><code>more [/binary] <target-file></code></p>

Table 3-5. File Management Commands (Continued)

Command	Description	Syntax
rename	The rename command renames <i>source-file</i> to <i>target-file</i> . Both <i>source-file</i> and <i>target-file</i> must reside on logical or physical file systems; they cannot be on remote file systems. Both <i>source-file</i> and <i>target-file</i> must be writable.	<code>rename <source-file> <target-file></code>
rmdir	The rmdir command deletes a directory off of a physical file system. If <i>directory</i> exists, it will be removed. If it does not exist, an appropriate failure message notifies the user. Everything contained in the directory will be removed as well.	<code>rmdir <directory></code>

Backing Up and Restoring Files

ProCurve Networking recommends that you backup your system image and configuration files.

Backing Up System Files

To back up your system:

- For local backups, enter the **copy** command and specify the file to be backed up and destination path and filename.
- For remote backups, enter the **copy <scp | tftp>** command and specify the file URL and the destination path.

Note

For secure image transfer, use the **copy scp** command.

To restore your system from a backup file, simply reverse the steps above (**copy** command for local restore and **copy <scp | tftp>** for remote restore).

Backing Up and Restoring Configuration Files

- You can back up the running-config, and startup configuration files to a local directory or to a remote host.
- In case of a system failure, you can restore your system as you have it configured. In a worst case scenario of a system failure, you can download a new default startup configuration file from the ProCurve Networking Web site at <http://www.procurve.com>.

Backing Up Startup Configuration

When you save the startup configuration file, the switch stores it in three places: in the boot flash and the PC card of the primary management module, and if there is a redundant management module, in its PC flash card as well. It is recommended that you store a backup of the startup configuration file on a central server.

- To store a backup copy of the startup configuration file on to a server, use the **copy** command in Privileged Exec mode:

```
ProCurve#copy startup |<filename>|<url>
```

- To make a local backup in the management module, specify the following command in Privileged Exec mode:

```
ProCurve#copy startup flash:startup.bak
```

where *startup.bak* represents the chosen filename for your local backup.

- If the startup file is accidentally overwritten, the switch uses its default configuration. You can then use the copy command to overwrite the corrupted startup file with the backup file, as in the following example:

```
ProCurve#copy flash:startup.bak startup
```

Managing System Devices and Software

Refer to the following procedures to upgrade system software and manage modules on the switch.

Determining Software Versions

To display the software versions running on the 8100fl switch and modules, enter the **show version** command:

```
ProCurve#show version [{all-modules | fabric-module |  
interface-module | licenses | management module | summary }]
```

You can use additional parameters to display detailed version information for all installed modules, for different module types, and/or for specific individual slots.

The following example shows how to display summary version information for all installed modules (the default) by entering the **show version** command without specifying any additional parameters.

```
ProCurve#show version  
  
ProCurve Networking Switch 8100fl Series System Software  
Version CY.02.02.0051  
Copyright (c) 1998-2005 by ProCurve Networking.  
Compiled on Sun Jan 22 20:20:26 PST 2006  
Bootloader Version CY.02.02.0004  
Switch uptime is 18 hours, 4 minutes, 28 seconds  
System restarted by cold reset  
System image file is ms-CY.02.02.0051.ver  
  
ProCurve 8108fl chassis  
1 Management-Module  
2 Fabric-Module(8108fl)s  
1 Std 10 Port 1G Fiber SFP  
1 Std 10 Port 100/1G Copper  
1 Std 1 Port 10G-LR  
2 1 Port 10G-X2s  
  
ProCurve#
```

Upgrading Software

For easy software image management, the 8100fl switch supports the download and upload of software images between the compact flash on the management module and a server on the network (see [“Backing Up and Restoring Files” on page 3-7](#)).

To update the installed software or firmware on the switch, enter the **image** command at the Privileged Exec level of the CLI:

```
ProCurve#image install <imagename> [chassis | {management-  
module slot | fabric-module slot | interface-module slot }]
```

where

imagename is the path and/or filename for the software distribution file.

Note

When you install a new image, it will automatically be placed in the opposite flash bank to the one currently in use. So if you are running in bank-A, it will be placed in bank-B and vice versa.

Rebooting

You can use boot commands to immediately initiate software boots from a software image stored in bank-A or bank-B.

To stop the system and force an immediate restart, enter the **reload** command at the Privileged Exec level of the CLI:

```
ProCurve#reload [chassis | {management-module slot |  
fabric-module slot | interface-module slot }] [soft | hard]  
[reason]
```

To specify the boot image to use when rebooting the switch, enter the **boot system** command at the Privileged Exec level of the CLI:

```
ProCurve#boot system [chassis | {management-module slot |  
fabric-module slot | interface-module slot }] {bank-A |  
bank-B}
```

Managing Modules

To control the power and administrative states of modules on the switch, enter the **set module** command from Configuration mode in the CLI:

```
ProCurve(config)#set module {enable | disable} {management-  
module slot | fabric-module slot | interface-module slot }  
ProCurve(config)#set module {poweron | poweroff} {fabric-  
module slot | interface-module slot}
```

where

enable sets the administrative state up,
disable sets the administrative state down,
poweron turns on power to the module, and
poweroff turns off the power to the module.

The following example shows how to power up the interface module in slot 3:

```
ProCurve(config)#set module poweron interface 3
```

Management Modules and File Management

Management module redundancy adds another layer of complexity to file management. You may want to have the standby module to mirror the content on the active module so that the system can survive a switchover with as little change in environment as possible.

In normal operation, whenever changes are made to the primary management module's startup configuration file, the changes are copied to the redundant management module's configuration file. In this way, if the primary management module fails, the secondary module has the configuration information necessary to take over as the primary.

Note

The file management commands apply only to the primary Management Module. You cannot display, delete, or rename files in the backup Management Module.

Replacing Modules and Redundancy

If the primary management module fails, the redundant management module will reboot the fabric module and interface modules. During this time, service will be affected.

You can gracefully stop a management module or fabric module and cause the redundant module to take over by using the following command in Privileged Exec mode:

```
ProCurve#halt <module>
```

Alternatively, you can power down the fabric module slot by issuing the following command:

```
ProCurve#power down <fabric-module slot>
```

Note

When you power down a slot, the system turns power off to that slot and will keep power off until you enter the **power up** command. This is true even if you reboot the system.

Showing Redundancy Status

To view the active or standby status of redundant management or fabric modules, enter the **show redundancy** command. This displays the following types of information:

```
ProCurve#show redundancy
Slot  Module-Type          Model              State  Switch
-----
MM-A  Management Module     fl Mgmt           active auto
MM-B  Management Module     No module         standby auto
FM-A  Fabric Module         8108fl Fabric     active auto
MM-B  Management Module     No module         standby auto
```

Switching Over Redundant Modules

To switch the system to the backup management or fabric module, enter the **redundancy switchover** command at the Privileged Exec level of the CLI:

```
ProCurve#redundancy switchover {management-module | fabric-
module} [manual | force | lock | clear]
```

Monitoring System Hardware

This section provides details on monitoring the system hardware, including finding the chassis serial number and displaying information on the modules that are installed in the switch.

Showing Hardware Information

Use the **show hardware** command to display switch hardware inventory details, including the chassis serial number and summary details of all installed modules on the switch.

```

Chassis Information
System type           : ProCurve 8108f1
Chassis Serial Number : SG444SS014
Primary Management-Module : MM-A
Secondary Management-Module : not present
Primary Fabric-Module   : FM-A
Secondary Fabric-Module : FM-B

Slot Information

Slot  Module-Type           Hw version  Hw revision  Optical Type
-----
IM-1  1 Port 10G-X2             2           1f0          --NA--
IM-3  Std 10 Port 100/1G Copper 1           102          --NA--
IM-4  UNKNOWN                   0           0            --NA--
IM-5  Std 10 Port 1G Fiber SFP  1           101          SFP-unknown
IM-6  1 Port 10G-X2             2           1f0          --NA--
IM-7  1 Port 10G-X2             2           1f0          --NA--
IM-8  Std 1 Port 10G-LR         2           1f0          LR
MM-A  Management-Module         2           1            --NA--
FM-A  Fabric-Module(8108f1)     2           1            --NA--
FM-B  Fabric-Module(8108f1)     2           1            --NA--
    
```

Showing Module Information

Use the `show modules` command to display summary status information on all installed modules on the switch.

```
ProCurve#show module
Chassis Serial Number :SG444SS014
```

Slot	Module-Type	Part Number	Model	Admin	Power	Status	running sw
IM-1	1 Port 10G-X2		J8736A	enabled	power on	OK	CY.02.02.0039
IM-3	Std 10 Port 100/1G Copper		J8734A	enabled	power on	OK	CY.02.02.0039
IM-4	UNKNOWN		UNKNOWN	enabled	power on	unknown	
IM-5	Std 10 Port 1G Fiber SFP		J8735A	enabled	power on	OK	CY.02.02.0039
IM-6	1 Port 10G-X2		J8736A	enabled	power on	OK	CY.02.02.0039
IM-7	1 Port 10G-X2		J8736A	enabled	power on	OK	CY.02.02.0039
IM-8	UNKNOWN		UNKNOWN	enabled	power on	unknown	
MM-A	Management-Module		J8731A	enabled	power on	OK	CY.02.02.0039
FM-A	Fabric-Module(8108f1)		J8729A	enabled	power on	OK	CY.02.02.0039
FM-B	Fabric-Module(8108f1)		J8729A	enabled	power on	OK	CY.02.02.0039

To see a more detailed status of all installed modules on the switch (management, fabric, and interface), enter the **show modules all** command.

Showing Temperature, Fan, and Power Supply Status

Use the **show environment** command to display the following environment-related status information:

<code>fans</code>	Display blower and fan information.
<code>power</code>	Display power module information.
<code>temperature</code>	Display temperature information.
<code>thresholds</code>	Display the temperature, fan, and voltage thresholds.

Configuring Basic Features

Contents

Overview.....	4-2
Configuring Basic System Information.....	4-2
Setting the Management Module IP Address	4-2
Setting the System Date and Time	4-4
Setting System Parameters	4-4
Setting the Host Name	4-4
Setting System ID, Location, and Contact	4-4
Setting the Log in Banners	4-5
Configuring Terminal Services	4-6
Establishing a Telnet Connection	4-6
Configuring Terminal Line Parameters	4-6
Saving and Using the New Configuration	4-8
Configuring Port Parameters.....	4-9
Specifying Slot and Port Numbers	4-9
Slot Numbering	4-10
Activating or Disabling Ports	4-11
Modifying Port Speed	4-12
Modifying Port Mode	4-12
Disabling or Re-enabling Flow Control	4-12
Assigning a Description	4-13

Overview

This chapter describes how to configure basic, non-protocol features on the 8100fl switch using the CLI. The switch is configured at the factory with default parameters that allow you to use basic features of the system immediately. However, many of the advanced features such as VLANs or routing protocols must be enabled at the system (global) level before they can be configured.

Configuring Basic System Information

The first, and only essential, task in basic system configuration is assigning the IP address to the management port. This is the IP address that you use to access the 8100fl switch on the network.

Follow the procedures in this section to set the following system information:

- IP address for the management port on the management module
- System time and date
- System name
- System location
- Contact name (the person to contact regarding this switch)
- Log in banners
- Telnet

Note

The running configuration remains in effect only during the current power cycle. If you power off or reboot the switch without saving the running configuration changes to the Startup configuration file, the changes are lost. For more information, see [“Saving Configuration Changes” on page 3-2](#).

Setting the Management Module IP Address

To set the system IP address and enable Telnet access to the switch:

1. Connect a serial console to the switch that uses VT-100 emulation.
2. At the command line prompt, enter the **enable** command to get to Privileged Exec mode in the CLI.

3. From the Privileged Exec mode, enter the **configure** command to get to Configuration mode in the CLI.
4. From Configuration mode, enter the following command to access the management interface:

```
ProCurve(config)#interface management 0
```

5. From Interface Management mode, enter the following command:

```
ProCurve(config-interface-management)#ip address  
<ipaddr> <mask>
```

where *<ipaddr>* is the IPv4 unicast address and *<mask>* is the subnet mask you assign to the switch. You can specify the subnet mask in terms of mask bits. For example:

```
ip address 10.10.1.45 255.255.248.0
```

You can also specify the mask length. For example:

```
ip address 10.10.1.45/21
```

6. Enable the management port, by entering the following command:

```
ProCurve(config-interface-management)#no shutdown
```

Here is an example, showing all of the preceding steps:

```
ProCurve>enable  
ProCurve#configure  
ProCurve(config)#interface management0  
ProCurve(config-interface-management)#ip address  
10.10.1.45 255.255.248.0  
ProCurve(config-interface-management)#no shutdown
```

7. From Configuration mode, enter the following commands to enable telnet on the switch:

```
ProCurve(config)#ip telnet  
ProCurve(config-telnet)#no shutdown
```

8. Enable a terminal line to the switch by entering:

```
ProCurve(config)#line vty 0
```

where *0* represents the vty terminal line connection.

Note

The 8100fl switch supports a maximum of ten incoming remote vty connections (0 through 9), plus one console connection.

9. Enter **write memory** to save the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Setting the System Date and Time

To set the system date and time:

1. From the Privileged Exec mode (#) prompt, enter the **clock set** command:

```
ProCurve#clock set <HH:MM:SS> <1...31> <month> <year>
```

2. To verify your settings, enter the **show clock** command:

```
ProCurve#show clock
```

The following example shows how to set the clock to 10:45:29 AM on June 30, 2005, and then verify the settings:

```
ProCurve#clock set 10:45:29 30 june 2005
ProCurve#show clock
*10:45:29 UTC Tues June30 2005
```

Note

For instructions on how to see the time using Network Time Protocol (NTP), see [“Using NTP” on page 17-3](#).

Setting System Parameters

The following system parameters and commands can be entered only from Configuration mode in the CLI.

Setting the Host Name

To set the system name, enter the following command:

```
ProCurve(config)#hostname
```

For example, to enter the hostname “ProCurve8108”, type the following:

```
ProCurve(config)#hostname ProCurve8108
```

Setting System ID, Location, and Contact

To assign a chassis ID, a physical location, and a contact person to the system using snmp (Simple Network Management Protocol), enter the following commands:

```
ProCurve(config)#snmp-server location <string>
ProCurve(config)#snmp-server chassis-id <string>
ProCurve(config)#snmp-server contact <string>
```

where *<string>* represents the text you enter to specify the location, chassis identity, and contact support information for the switch.

Setting the Log in Banners

When a user connects to the switch, they will encounter banners (if they have been configured) in the following order:

1. message of the day (MOTD) banner - displays whenever a user connects to the switch using either a serial or telnet connection.
2. login banner - displays during login if a password has been defined for the telnet line that they are connecting on.

To create a message of the day (MOTD), use the following command:

```
ProCurve(config)#banner motd "message"
```

To create a login banner, use the following command:

```
ProCurve(config)#banner login "login"
```

If the switch is configured for aaa authentication (see [“Configuring Login Prompts” on page 5-12](#)), you can then configure authentication and authentication failure banners with the following commands.

To create an authentication banner, enter:

```
ProCurve(config)#aaa authentication banner "banner"
```

To create an authentication failure banner, enter:

```
ProCurve(config)#aaa authentication fail-message "fail"
```

Configuring Terminal Services

The Series 8100fl Switch supports up to 10 concurrent Telnet sessions (numbered from 0 through 9) for a maximum of ten incoming remote connections.

Use the shutdown command to terminate the Telnet service. The following example shows how to terminate a Telnet connection:

```
ProCurve(config)#ip telnet
ProCurve(config-telnet)#
ProCurve(config-telnet)#shutdown
```

Establishing a Telnet Connection

To open a Telnet connection to a specified host, from Exec or Privileged Exec mode enter the **telnet** command:

```
ProCurve#telnet <target> [port | service] [/vrf vrfname]
```

For example, to create a telnet session to another device for which the ip address is 10.10.1.24, enter:

```
ProCurve#telnet 10.10.1.24
```

Configuring Terminal Line Parameters

The Series 8100fl Switch supports multiple lines (up to 10 vty connections, plus a console connection), and provides some flexibility in configuring parameters for each connection. From Privileged Exec mode, type the **configure** command and then the terminal line number to enter Terminal Line Configuration mode. When in this mode, you can configure various terminal line parameters for the switch during operation.

For example, enter the following commands to turn on the Exec level banner:

```
ProCurve#config
ProCurve(config)#line vty 0
ProCurve(config-line)#exec-banner
```

where **line vty 0** corresponds to the terminal line that you wish to configure.

Use similar steps to configure the following terminal line parameters:

- To limit the amount of time (in minutes) that a session on this line can remain connected without activity, enter:

```
ProCurve(config-line)#exec-timeout <value>
```

where *value* is an integer designating the timer inactivity in minutes (enter a value of 0 to set an unlimited time for each session).

- To configure the system to perform local password checking on this line, enter:

```
ProCurve(config-line)#login-authentication <method-list>
```

Note

To use the default authentication list (instead of a named method list), enter **login authentication default**.

- To configure authorization for this line:

```
ProCurve(config-line)#authorization {commands level |  
exec} method-list
```

- To configure the terminal length (in lines) for this terminal line:

```
ProCurve(config-line)#length <value>
```

Note

Setting the length to 0 disables auto-pager.

- To configure the terminal width in characters for this line:

```
ProCurve(config-line)#width <value>
```

- To configure a password that users must enter to gain access to this line:

```
ProCurve(config-line)#password {[0] cleartext-pw | 5  
hidden-pw}
```

where 0 indicates a permanently unencrypted password, 5 indicates an encrypted password.

Note

For more information on setting up prompts and passwords for your switch, see [“Configuring Passwords” on page 5-2](#).

Saving and Using the New Configuration

1. To activate the system commands entered in the previous steps, use the following command:

```
ProCurve#save running-config
```

The CLI displays the following message:

```
ProCurve(config)#save running-config
Please wait, acquiring configuration lock...done in 0.00
seconds
Now activating configuration changes, status report will
be returned shortly.
ProCurve(config)#
0w0d: %SYS-7-CONFIG_RESULTS: 0 fail in 0 seconds

ProCurve(config)#
```

2. To display the running configuration, enter the following command:

```
ProCurve(config)#show running-config
```

Here is an example of displaying the running configuration:

```
ProCurve(config)#show running-config
interface GigabitEthernet1/1
  no shutdown
  ip address 10.16.100.2/30
interface GigabitEthernet1/2
interface GigabitEthernet1/3
interface GigabitEthernet1/4
interface Loopback0
  ip address 10.16.130.4/32
ProCurve 8100fl ospf 1
  network 10.16.0.0 0.0.255.255 area 10.16.0.0
  ip route 10.200.0.0/16 10.203.255.254
  ip route 10.201.0.0/16 10.203.255.254
  !
end
ProCurve(config)#
```

Note

For more details on interacting with configuration files, see [“Maintaining Configuration Files” on page 3-2](#).

Configuring Port Parameters

Changes to port parameters are made using the **interface** *<port>* command to adjust to attached devices or other network requirements. Follow the procedures in this section to set the following port parameters:

- Activating or disabling ports
- Modifying port speed
- Modifying port mode
- Disabling or re-enabling flow control
- Assigning a description to an interface

Note

To modify Layer 2, Layer 3, or Layer 4 features on a port, see the appropriate section in other chapters. For example, to modify Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) parameters for a port, see [Chapter 9, “Spanning-Tree Operation”](#).

Specifying Slot and Port Numbers

The term port refers to a physical connector on an interface module installed in the switch. At the CLI, each port is referred to in the following manner:

<type> *<slot-number>*/*<port-number>*

where:

<type> is the type of module and/or the type of logical or physical interface, and is one of the following:

- **ethernet** – Ethernet (IEEE 802.3[z])
- **gigabitethernet** – GigabitEthernet (IEEE 802.3z)
- **lag** – Link aggregation interface
- **loopback** – Loopback interface
- **management** – Management interface
- **null** – Null interlace
- **tengigabitethernet** – 10 GigabitEthernet (IEEE 802.3ae)
- **vlan** – VLAN interface

<slot-number> is determined by the switch model and the physical slot in which the module is installed (see [“Slot Numbering” on page 4-10](#)).

<port-number> is the number assigned to the physical connector on the interface module. The range and assignment of port numbers varies by the type of module. Ports are numbered 1 to *n*, top to bottom.

For example, the port name **gi 3/2** refers to a port on the Gigabit Ethernet interface module located in slot 3, port 2.

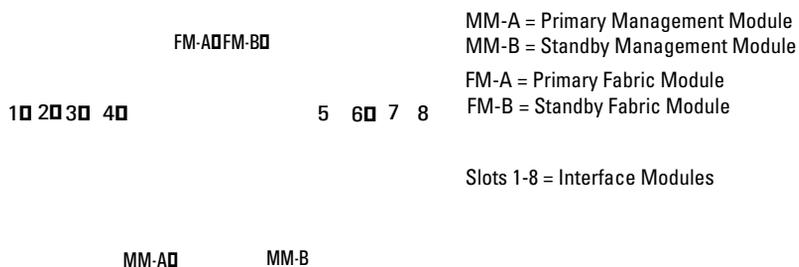
Note

You can build a configuration for a module that is not yet installed. For example, although slot 2 is empty, you can configure an interface **gi 2/1** and add an IP address to it, and then save the configuration for later use. Similarly, a 10 gigabit interface (**te 2/1**) could be configured for the empty slot in the same way.

Slot Numbering

To configure or address individual modules and ports, you must know the corresponding slot name or number. Slot numbering is determined by the switch model and the physical slot into which an interface module is installed.

Switch 8108fl Slot Numbering. The Switch 8108fl chassis contains 8 slots for interface modules, 2 slots for management modules, and 2 slots for fabric modules. The following illustration shows the numbering and naming scheme used to identify each slot in the CLI.



Modifying Port Speed

The 8100fl switch ports are designed to auto-negotiate the speed and mode of the connected device. If the attached device does not support auto-negotiation, you can manually enter the port speed to operate at either 100 Mbps or 1000 Mbps.

To modify a port speed, enter the **speed** command from the interface configuration mode. For example, to change the port speed of gigabitethernet port 5 in slot 2 to 100 Mbps, enter the following:

```
ProCurve(config)#interface gi 2/5
ProCurve(config-if)#speed fastethernet
```

The speed *<value>* that you enter can be one of the following:

- *auto* – sets the speed to auto-negotiate mode
- *fastethernet* – sets the speed to 100Mbps
- *gigabit* – sets the speed to 1000Mbps

Modifying Port Mode

The **mode** command can be used to control behavior for a specified interface. The two command options are **no mode** (the default) or **mode slave**, which sets the mac to act in slave mode. For example, to change the port speed of ethernet port 6 in slot 1 to act in slave mode, enter the following:

```
ProCurve(config)#interface et 1/6
ProCurve(config-if)#mode slave
```

Disabling or Re-enabling Flow Control

The **flowcontrol** and **no flowcontrol** commands allows you to configure ports on the switch to operate with or without flow control (802.3.x). Flow control is enabled by default.

For example, to disable flow control on ethernet port 8 in slot 1, enter the following:

```
ProCurve(config)#interface et 1/8
ProCurve(config-if)#no flowcontrol
```

To re-enable flow control:

```
ProCurve(config)#interface et 1/8  
ProCurve(config-if)#flowcontrol
```

Note

Flow control is enabled by default and is not reported in show interface configuration displays. The flow control state is only reported when it is disabled (**no flowcontrol**).

Assigning a Description

The **description line** command allows you to enter a text description for a specified interface.

For example, to label the gigabitethernet port 3 in slot 1 as **MAIN TRUNK**, enter the following:

```
ProCurve(config)#interface gi 1/3  
ProCurve(config-if)#description line MAIN TRUNK
```

To remove this description:

```
ProCurve(config)#interface gi 1/3  
ProCurve(config-if)#no description
```

Note

You can assign a description to physical ports, virtual routing interfaces and loopback interfaces.

— *This page is intentionally unused.* —

Security Configuration

Contents

Overview.....	5-2
Configuring Passwords.....	5-2
Preventing Lock Outs	5-2
Specifying the CLI-level Password	5-3
Specifying Privilege Levels	5-4
Specifying Line-level Passwords	5-5
Recovering from Forgotten Passwords	5-6
Using SSH.....	5-8
Establishing SSH Sessions	5-8
Monitoring SSH Sessions	5-9
Using SSH and Telnet Sessions	5-10
Configuring Authentication	5-11
Configuring Authentication Method Lists	5-11
Configuring Authorization	5-12
Configuring Login Prompts	5-12
Configuring Accounting	5-13
Configuring RADIUS.....	5-15
Monitoring RADIUS	5-16
Configuring TACACS+	5-17
Monitoring TACACS+	5-18

Overview

The 8100fl switch provides security features that help control access and filter traffic. Access to the switch can be controlled by:

- Terminal line password authentication
- Secure shell protocol (version 1 and 2, server and client)
- RADIUS
- TACACS+
- Local user names and passwords

Note

The 8100fl switch requires you to turn on access features that affect security. By default, these features are turned off.

Configuring Passwords

The switch provides password authentication for accessing the User and Privileged Exec modes. If TACACS+ or RADIUS is not enabled on the switch, only switch-level password authentication is performed (if configured).

Preventing Lock Outs

Caution

To avoid being locked out of the CLI when implementing password changes, note the following precautions:

- Verify parameter values by using the **show running-config** command before saving security commands to the startup configuration file on the switch. Any misconfiguration can effectively lock you out of the CLI.
- If you forget your line-level passwords, you can log on using the console and enter new passwords. Once enter the new passwords to the running configuration, other users who access these lines can use the new passwords. To make the changes permanent, save the running configuration to the startup configuration.

- To test your configuration safely, leave your startup configuration unchanged. Add your planned changes to the running config, and then verify that you can log on safely before saving any changes to the startup config.
 - If your changes to the running config lock you out, you can (as a last resort) power cycle the switch to revert to your unchanged startup config.
 - If your changes to the startup config lock you out, refer to [“Recovering from Forgotten Passwords” on page 5-6](#) for recovery procedures.
 - If the switch cannot reach the RADIUS server and there is no other authentication method configured, then you will be locked out of the CLI. In this case, one can configure TACACS+ and/or local authentication as a fallback so that when RADIUS authentication fails, the next available method is tried.
-

Specifying the CLI-level Password

To configure a switch enable password (that is, a Privileged Exec mode password), enter the following command in Configuration mode:

```
ProCurve(config)#enable secret [encrypt|0|5] <string>
```

By default the password you enter will be encrypted to prevent it from being displayed in clear text in the configuration file output.

The optional encryption parameters [encrypt | 0 | 5] control password encryption in the following ways:

- Specifying **encrypt** causes the switch to encrypt the clear text password (<string>). The encrypted password will appear in the configuration file as `enable secret 5 <encrypted string>`. This is the same as the default.
- Specifying a **0** forces the switch to display the password entry as clear text in your configuration files.
- Specifying a **5** indicates the string that follows has been encrypted.

Notes

When you enter the password string, type it as clear text. When you press **[Enter]**, the switch will perform the hash algorithm for you and produce the encrypted output

The enable password does not prevent users from accessing the switch—it restricts access to Exec mode only.

For example:

To create an encrypted password called “mysecretpassword” enter;

```
ProCurve(config)#enable secret mysecretpassword
```

When you enter **show running-config**, this will appear as a line in the running configuration as follows:

```
enable secret 5 $1$ZyK.$8NHx2DJBsiGQyhTBmUakz1
```

where *5* indicates that the password has been encrypted.

To allow passwords to be displayed in an unencrypted format, enter **0** before you enter the password.

For example:

To create a clear text password called “mypassword” enter;

```
ProCurve(config)#enable secret 0 mypassword
```

When you save this setting, it will appear as a line in the running configuration as follows:

```
enable secret 0 mypassword
```

where *0* indicates that the password is not encrypted.

Caution

Test all new passwords before saving the running configuration to the Startup configuration file.

After password protecting access to the CLI, you can still access the switch without a password by connecting a terminal line configured without password protection. To password protect terminal lines from users connecting with Telnet or SSH, see [“Specifying Line-level Passwords”](#).

Specifying Privilege Levels

The ProCurve 8100fl supports two levels of privileges to which you can assign passwords, level 0 and level 15:

- **Level 0** places users at the Exec mode and limits their access to the commands at this level.
- **Level 15** places users at the Privileged Exec mode and allows them full access to the CLI commands.

To configure a switch password and set the privilege level, enter the following command in Configuration mode:

```
ProCurve(config)#enable secret level <lvl> [encrypt|0|5]  
<string>
```

where

<lvl> is either 0 (Exec mode) or 15 (Privileged Exec mode); and
[0|5] can be either 0 (an unencrypted password) or 5 (hidden or encrypted)

For example, to set and encrypt a Privileged Exec mode password as abcd1234, you would enter the following command:

```
ProCurve(config)#enable secret level 15 5 abcd1234
```

By default, the ProCurve 8100fl allocates users full access at privilege level 15.

To create a user with restricted access (Exec mode only), assign privilege level 0 by entering the following command in Configuration mode:

```
ProCurve(config)#username <name> privilege <0> password  
<string>
```

Note

Exec mode privileges provide only limited access to the system. It allows users to perform basic system-level tasks such as launch ping requests, show running system information, and set terminal line parameters; it does not allow the user to make any configuration changes.

Specifying Line-level Passwords

The 8100fl switch supports up to 10 vty remote connections for which you can assign line-level passwords. To prevent unauthorized access, it is recommended you assign line-level password protection to all the terminal lines that you configure.

To add password protection to each terminal (or console) line:

1. From Configuration mode, enter the following command:

```
ProCurve(config)#line vty 0
```

where 0 represents the line number of the vty terminal line connection.

2. Enter the following command to configure a password to the line that you have specified:

```
ProCurve(config-line)#password <password>
```

By default the password you enter will be encrypted to prevent it from being displayed in the configuration file output.

For example:

To create an encrypted password called “mysecretpassword” enter;

```
ProCurve(config-line)#password mysecretpassword
```

When you enter **show running-config**, this will appear as a line in the running configuration as follows:

```
password 5 $1$ZyK.$8NHx2DJBsiGQyhTBmUakz1
```

where *5* indicates that the password is encrypted as an MD5 hash.

To allow passwords to be displayed in an unencrypted format, enter **0** before you enter the password.

For example:

To create a clear text password called “mypassword” enter;

```
ProCurve(config)#enable secret 0 mypassword
```

When you save this setting, it will appear as a line in the running configuration as follows:

```
enable secret 0 mypassword
```

where *0* indicates that the password is not encrypted.

Note

By default all passwords are encrypted, meaning that they will not display in readable text in the configuration files. To specify an unencrypted password, you must enter a **0** before entering the password text.

3. Repeat steps 1 and 2 to assign a line-level password to each terminal line that you have configured on the switch.

Recovering from Forgotten Passwords

To recover from a lost password, you can reboot the switch, bypass startup configuration processing, and then reset the password from Boot mode in the CLI. To do so, follow the steps below:

Note

The following procedure may only be performed via the serial console. Because this procedure allows passwords to be changed without actually logging onto the switch, physical security should be maintained at all times.

1. If you have two Management Modules installed, pull the backup module out of its slot so that only one Management Module is active.
2. Connect a serial console to the switch, and then perform a power cycle to reboot the switch.
3. Interrupt the normal bootup sequence—at the point where it says: “Press <Enter> to execute or <ESC> to abort”—by pressing the **[Esc]** key.

This will put you into Boot mode—the prompt will change to **PMON >**.

4. From Boot mode, enter the following commands:

```
PMON> set STARTUP_MODE skip_config
PMON> boot
```

The configuration process will then skip the startup configuration and the switch will boot up with the factory default settings.

5. At the reboot, enter a new password.

If you have removed a backup management module, insert it back into its slot before saving the new settings to the startup configuration—this will synchronize both the running and backup startup configurations to use the new password.

6. To make the changes permanent, save the new password setting to the startup configuration using the **write memory** command.

The next time you reboot the system, you and other users will be able to use the new password for access and authentication.

Notes

When the boot environment variable `STARTUP_MODE` is set to “skip_config” this indicates the configuration process should skip loading the startup config while initializing. This variable is reset after use, so the next boot will again use the startup configuration if present.

You can use the same procedure to bypass a bad startup configuration or start the switch in factory-settings mode for troubleshooting purposes.

Using SSH

SSH provides more secure communications than using Telnet because connections are authenticated and communications over the network are encrypted. Secure shell (SSH) is a protocol based on OpenSSH that allows you to log in to a remote switch and execute commands on that system.

The switch provides both an SSH server and client. To configure the SSH server use the Configuration mode command **ip ssh** (and the SSH Configuration mode **no shutdown** command).

Both server and client support SSH version 1 and 2. If TACACS+ or RADIUS authentication is enabled on the switch, passwords are authenticated by the TACACS+ or RADIUS server. Private and public keys on a per-user basis are *not* supported.

Establishing SSH Sessions

The SSH Server parameters are:

```
ProCurve(config)#ip ssh
ProCurve(config-ssh)#?
Secure Shell Server commands:
  address      - Set address on which to accept Secure Shell connections
  ciphers      - Set ciphers to allow for Secure Shell protocol version 2
  macs         - Set Message Authentication Codes to allow for SSH protocol
                version 2
  port         - Set default port for Secure Shell
  power        - Power control various slots
  shutdown     - Stop Secure Shell service
  ssh          - Open a Secure Shell connection to another host
  version      - Set Secure Shell protocol versions to use
```

The SSH client parameters are:

```
ProCurve(config)#ssh ?  
-1 - Force protocol version 1  
-2 - Force protocol version 2  
-c - Specify encryption algorithm  
-e - Specify escape character  
-l - Specify a user name to log in as  
-m - Specify MAC algorithm for protocol version 2  
-p - Specify the port to connect to on the remote host  
WORD(1..1024) - Target address or hostname
```

Note

The **WORD** parameter must be the last parameter you enter. If you enter the **WORD** parameter as the second parameter for example, the CLI will not allow you to enter any of the other display parameters. Instead, the CLI will prompt you for an optional **LINE**, which you can use to enter a command string (like **show users**). This string will be run upon connection, you will see the output of this command. Then the connection will terminate. This is useful for situations where you just want information but do not want to maintain a connection. The **-e** option (specify an escape character) is useful as a toggle to other SSH sessions.

To establish SSH connections between a 8100fl switch host and any terminal, you must match the version level (typically version 2), port to use, encryption algorithm, and so on.

If a login password has been configured on the switch, you will be prompted for it. Because communications between the SSH client and server is now encrypted within the SSH session, the password cannot be read by other users on the network. You can use CLI commands in the SSH session as you normally would through a console or Telnet connection.

To end your SSH session, type **exit** (or **quit**, or **logout**). If necessary, repeat entering **exit** to disconnect your connection. You can also terminate your SSH session by typing **~**. (To end your console session, type **exit**, **quit**, or **logout**. The console terminates your Exec session and resets the terminal line.)

Monitoring SSH Sessions

The switch allows up to 10 simultaneous SSH (or Telnet) sessions. Use the **show users** command to see current Telnet and SSH users and session IDs.

Using SSH and Telnet Sessions

You can combine SSH connections with Telnet connections to reach your destination. [Figure 5-1](#) shows different ways to mix secure and unsecure connections and the consequences experienced.

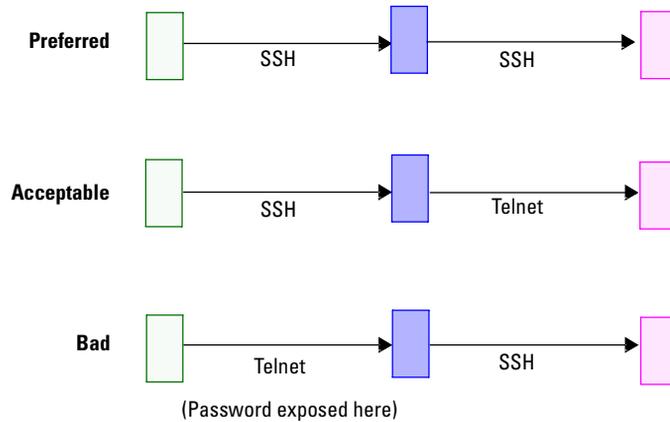


Figure 5-1. Security Considerations when Mixing Telnet and SSH Sessions

Configuring Authentication

You can configure authentication at the following levels:

- Line
- Enable mode
- Local user
- RADIUS/TACACS+ server groups

To configure the authentication lists for logging in, enter the following command in Configuration mode:

```
ProCurve(config)#aaa authentication login <method list>  
group <group name> line |local | enable |none
```

The parameters can be used as follows:

- Method lists include individual lists you create or **default**. Specifying **default** is equivalent to entering **no aaa authentication login**.

Caution

Ignoring options after the *method list* option will apply the default behavior of denying access. This is useful if intended. Unintended use will result in being locked out of the system (that is, if you specify **line**, you effectively apply default values and preserve your ability to log into the system).

- The *group* option allows you to use the default RADIUS or TACACS+ server group or to use a *group name* to specify a defined server group.
- Specify **enable** to use the enable password.
- Specify **line** to apply authentication to individual console or terminal line connections to the switch.
- Specify **local** to enable users (configured with the **username** command) to access the system.
- Specify **none** to bypass authentication entirely.

Configuring Authentication Method Lists

To define the authentication method list for Privileged Exec mode, enter the following command from Configuration mode:

```
ProCurve(config)#aaa authentication enable default [group  
{radius | "tacacs+" | <group name>}...[enable | line | none]
```

The parameters can be used as follows:

- The *group* option allows you to use the default RADIUS or TACACS+ server group.
- The *group name* option allows you to specify a defined server group.
- Specify **enable** to set up an authentication method list for Privileged Exec mode.
- Specify **line** to use a line password.
- Specify **none** to bypass authentication.

Configuring Authorization

To restrict network access for individual users, enter the following command in Configuration mode:

```
ProCurve(config)#aaa authorization {commands <priv-level> |  
exec} {default | listname} [group {radius | tacacs+ | group-  
name}]... [if-authenticated | none]
```

The parameters can be used as follows:

- Specify a *command* and *privilege level* (see [page 5-8](#)) to check authorization for individual commands.
- Specify **default** to apply a default authorization list—the *listname* option allows you to specify a defined authorization list.
- The *group* and *group-name* options allow you to use defined RADIUS or TACACS+ server groups.
- Specify **if-authenticated** to authorize if authenticated.
- Specify **none** to bypass authentication.

Configuring Login Prompts

To configure the user login prompts for user name and password, enter the following commands in Configuration mode:

Table 5-1. Configuring Login Prompts

Command	Action
ProCurve(config)#aaa authentication username-prompt <prompt>	Configure the login user name prompt
ProCurve(config)#aaa authentication password-prompt <prompt>	Configure the login password prompt

To configure a banner to display prior to login, enter the following command in Configuration mode:

```
ProCurve(config)#aaa authentication banner <C_TEXT_C(0..1023)
- Banner text>
```

where *C_TEXT_C* means delimited text. Whatever character you first enter, will be interpreted as the delimiting text, that is, the character you must enter to terminate banner text entry. This convention allows you to enter multiple lines - totalling up to 1023 characters long. Without a convention to define the delimiting text, your banner text entry would terminate when you pressed the [Enter] key.

A common and useful delimiting character is the double quote (“). Note that the delimiting character does not print. For example, if you enter your banner text as:

“Welcome to the Acme ProCurve 8108fl”

your screen will display:

Welcome to the Acme ProCurve 8108fl

However, if you enter:

Welcome to the Acme ProCurve 8108fl

your screen will display:

elcome to the Acme ProCurve 8108fl

and you will have to enter a capital **W** to terminate banner text entry.

Configuring Accounting

Accounting collects data about user activity and system events and sends it to a server (or servers) when specified events occur on the switch such as a logoff or a reboot.

To provide accounting information for billing or security purposes, enter the following command in Configuration mode:

```
ProCurve(config)#aaa accounting {{commands priv-level |
exec} {default | listname} | {system {info | warning | error
| fatal} | cfg-change {running-config | startup-config}}
default} {none | {start-stop | stop-only} [broadcast]
[group {radius | tacacs+ | group-name}]...}
```

where:

commands account for shell commands,
default or *listname* specifies the accounting list to be used,
system accounts for system event messages,
cfg-change accounts for changes to the system configuration,
broadcast sends records to multiple servers, and
group specifies the server group to be used.

The following example accounts for commands assigned to user-defined level 15 and specifies that accounting records be sent after the first acknowledgement to the default RADIUS server group.

```
ProCurve(config)#aaa accounting commands 15 no-broadcast  
group radius
```

Note

Use the **no aaa accounting command** to disable aaa accounting.

Configuring RADIUS

You can secure Exec or Privileged Exec mode access to the switch by enabling a Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service (RADIUS) client. (See RFCs 2865 and 2866 for more information on RADIUS.) A RADIUS server responds to the switch RADIUS client to provide authentication.

You can configure multiple RADIUS server targets on the switch. You can configure a timeout value to tell the switch how long to wait for a response from RADIUS servers.

Note

The following list of commands contain parameters such as **deadtime** which are implemented globally. Some of the **radius-server** commands allow you to set the same parameter for a specific server. This specific setting overwrites the global setting. However, if you set this parameter at a server-group level, it overwrites both the individual server and global parameter setting.

To configure RADIUS security, enter the following commands in Configuration mode:

Table 5-2. Configuring RADIUS Security

Command	Action
radius-server challenge-noecho	Disable user input echoing to screen during an Access-Challenge
radius-server deadtime <minutes>	Set time that RADIUS server is ignored after it has failed. (That is, after a timeout has expired, and all the retransmits have been expended, do not try to contact this server for the specified amount of time.)
radius-server key [0 7]	Set shared secret key for RADIUS server.

Table 5-2. Configuring RADIUS Security (Continued)

Command	Action
radius-server host <server-options>	Uniquely define the host. Minimally, you can define an IP address or hostname, authentication port (default is 1812), and accounting port (default is 1813). If you specify authentication port or accounting port is 0, they will not be used. (You cannot specify that both authentication port and accounting ports be 0.)
radius-server source <address>	Sets the hostname or IP address of the RADIUS server to use for transactions.
radius-server timeout <seconds>	Set the maximum time to wait for a RADIUS server reply.
radius-server retransmit <number>	Set the number of retries to the active server.
aaa group server radius <group name>	Specify the name of the RADIUS server group (accesses the RADIUS server group mode). The <group name> parameter cannot be "radius," which is reserved for system use.

Monitoring RADIUS

To monitor RADIUS by showing server statistics, enter the **show radius servers** command in Privileged Exec mode.

The following example shows a sample configuration for two RADIUS servers:

```
ProCurve(config)#radius-server host 172.2.100.1 auth-port
1812 acct-port 1813 key hello
ProCurve(config)#radius-server host 172.2.100.2 auth-port
1200 acct-port 1201 key xyz

ProCurve(config)#aaa group server radius MYGROUP

server 172.2.100.1 auth-port 1812 acct-port 1813
server 172.2.100.2 auth-port 1200 acct-port 1201
```

Configuring TACACS+

You can secure Exec or Privileged Exec mode access to the switch by enabling a TACACS+ client. A TACACS+ server responds to the switch TACACS+ client to provide authentication.

You can configure multiple TACACS+ server targets on the switch. You can configure a timeout value to tell the switch how long to wait for a response from TACACS+ servers.

To configure TACACS+ security, enter the following commands in Configuration mode:

Table 5-3. Configuring TACACS+ Security

Command	Action
tacacs-server deadtime <minutes>	Set time that TACACS+ server is ignored after it has failed.
tacacs-server key [0 7]	Set shared secret key for TACACS+ server.
tacacs-server host <server-options>	Uniquely defines a TACACS+ server. Minimally you must configure an IP address and a port number (which cannot be 0). Default port address is 49.
tacacs-server source <address>	Set the hostname or IP address of the TACACS+ server to use for transactions.
tacacs-server timeout <seconds>	Set the maximum time to wait for a TACACS+ server reply.
tacacs-server single-connect <number>	Limit the server to use one TCP connection. This feature allows multiple connections over a single connection as opposed to repeatedly building up and tearing down connections.
aaa group server tacacs+ <group name>	Specify the name of the TACACS+ server group (accesses the TACACS+ server group mode). The <group name> parameter cannot be "radius," which is reserved for system use.

Monitoring TACACS+

To monitor TACACS+ by showing server statistics, enter the **show tacacs servers** command in Privileged Exec mode.

The following example shows a configuration for two TACACS+ servers:

```
ProCurve(config)#tacacs-server host 172.2.100.2 port 49 key
testing123
ProCurve(config)#tacacs-server host 172.2.100.1 port 49 key
testing123

ProCurve(config)#aaa group server tacacs+ MYTGROUP

server 172.2.100.1
server 172.2.100.2
```

VLAN Configuration

Contents

Overview.....	6-2
Layer 2 vs. Layer 3 VLANs	6-2
Ports, VLANs, and L3 Interfaces	6-3
Port-based VLANs	6-3
Explicit and Implicit VLANs	6-3
Access Ports and Trunk Ports (802.1P and 802.1Q support).....	6-4
Configuring a VLAN.....	6-5
Creating a VLAN	6-5
Adding Ports to a VLAN	6-6
The Default VLAN and Trunk and Access Port Behavior	6-6
VLAN Nonstandard Defaults	6-6
Access Port Behavior	6-7
Trunk Port Behavior	6-7
Monitoring VLANs	6-8

Overview

Virtual LANs (VLANs) are a means of dividing a physical network into several logical (virtual) LANs. The division can be done on the basis of various criteria, giving rise to different types of VLANs. For example, the simplest type of VLAN is the port-based VLAN. Port-based VLANs divide a network into a number of VLANs by assigning a VLAN to each port of a switching device. Then, any traffic received on a given port of a switch *belongs* to the VLAN associated with that port.

VLANs are primarily used for broadcast containment. A Layer 2 (L2) broadcast frame is normally transmitted all over a bridged network. By dividing the network into VLANs, the *range* of a broadcast is limited. This means the broadcast frame is transmitted only to the VLAN to which it belongs. This reduces the broadcast traffic on a network by an appreciable factor.

Layer 2 vs. Layer 3 VLANs

VLANs are an integral part of the 8100fl switch, which can function both as Layer 2 (L2) switches and as fully-functional Layer 3 (L3) routers. Hence they can be viewed as a switch and a router in one box. To provide maximum performance and functionality, the L2 and L3 aspects of the 8100fl switch are tightly coupled.

The switch can be used purely as an L2 switch. Frames arriving at any port are bridged and not routed. In this case, setting up VLANs and associating ports with VLANs is all that is required.

The switch can also be used purely as a router, that is, each physical port of the switch is a separate routing interface. Packets received at any interface are routed and not bridged. In this case, no VLAN configuration is required. Note that VLANs are still created implicitly as a result of creating L3 interfaces for IP. However, these implicit VLANs do not need to be created or configured manually. The implicit VLANs created by the switch are subnet-based VLANs.

Most commonly, the 8100fl switch is used as a combined switch and router. For example, the switch may be connected to two subnets S1 and S2. Ports 1-5 belong to S1 and ports 6-10 belong to S2. The required behavior of the switch is that intra-subnet frames be bridged and inter-subnet packets be routed. In other words, traffic between two workstations that belong to the same subnet should be bridged, and traffic between two workstations that belong to different subnets should be routed.

The 8100fl switch uses VLANs to achieve this behavior. This means that a Layer 3 subnet (that is, an IP subnet) is mapped to a VLAN. A given subnet maps to exactly one and only one VLAN. With this definition, the terms *VLAN* and *subnet* are almost interchangeable.

To configure a ProCurve 8100fl switch as a combined switch and router, the administrator must create VLANs whenever multiple ports of the switch are to belong to a particular VLAN/subnet. Then the VLAN must be *bound to* an L3 (IP) interface so that the switch knows which VLAN maps to which IP subnet.

Ports, VLANs, and L3 Interfaces

The term *port* refers to a physical connector on the switch, such as a GigabitEthernet port. Each port must belong to at least one VLAN. When the 8100fl switch is unconfigured, each port belongs to a VLAN called the “default VLAN.” By creating VLANs and adding ports to the created VLANs, the ports are moved from the default VLAN to the newly created VLANs.

Unlike traditional routers, the 8100fl switch has the concept of logical interfaces rather than physical interfaces. An L3 interface is a logical entity created by the administrator. It can contain more than one physical port. When an L3 interface contains exactly one physical port, it is equivalent to an interface on a traditional router. When an L3 interface contains several ports, it is equivalent to an interface of a traditional router which is connected to a Layer 2 device such as a switch or bridge.

Port-based VLANs

Ports of L2 devices (switches, bridges) are assigned to VLANs. Any traffic received by a port is classified as belonging to the VLAN to which the port belongs. For example, if ports 1, 2, and 3 belong to the VLAN named “Marketing”, then a broadcast frame received by port 1 is transmitted on ports 2 and 3. It is not transmitted on any other port.

Explicit and Implicit VLANs

As mentioned earlier, VLANs can either be created explicitly by the administrator (explicit VLANs) or are created implicitly by the switch when L3 interfaces are created (implicit VLANs).

Access Ports and Trunk Ports (802.1P and 802.1Q support)

The ports of the 8100fl switch can be classified into two types, based on VLAN functionality: **access ports** and **trunk ports**. By default, a port is an access port. An access port can belong to at most one VLAN. Frames transmitted out of an access port contain no special information about the VLAN to which they belong. These frames are classified as belonging to a particular VLAN based on the VLAN configured on the receiving port.

Trunk ports (802.1Q) are usually used to connect one VLAN-aware switch to another. They carry traffic belonging to several VLANs.

For example, suppose that two separate ProCurve 8100fl switches (switch A and switch B) are both configured with VLANs V1 and V2. Then a frame arriving at a port on switch A must be sent to switch B, if the frame belongs to VLAN V1 or to VLAN V2. Thus the ports on switch A and B which connect the two switches together must belong to both VLAN V1 and VLAN V2. Also, when these ports receive a frame, they must be able to determine whether the frame belongs to VLAN V1 or to VLAN V2. This is accomplished by “tagging” the frames, that is, by prepending information to the frame in order to identify the VLAN to which the frame belongs.

In the 8100fl switch, trunk ports normally transmit and receive tagged frames only. (The format of the tag is specified by the IEEE 802.1Q standard.) If you configure Spanning Tree Protocol, frames are transmitted as untagged frames. You can also configure native VLANs to enable 802.1Q trunk ports to receive and transmit untagged frames by entering.

```
ProCurve(config-if)#switchport trunk-native-vlan <VLAN ID>
```

Configuring a VLAN

This section shows you how to create a VLAN and assign ports.

Creating a VLAN

The 8100fl switch supports standards-based VLAN trunking between multiple 8100fl switches as defined by IEEE 802.1Q. 802.1Q adds a header to a standard Ethernet frame. These VLAN IDs extend the VLAN broadcast domain to more than one switch.

- To create a VLAN, enter the following command in Configuration mode:

```
ProCurve(config)#vlan <ID>
```

- To create a range of VLANs, enter the following command in Configuration mode:

```
ProCurve(config)#vlan <number range>
```

- To set the VLAN aging time, enter the following command in VLAN Configuration mode.

```
ProCurve(config-vlan)#aging <aging-time>
```

For example, to set VLAN 229 aging time to 30 seconds, enter

```
ProCurve(config)#vlan 229  
ProCurve(config-vlan-229)#aging 30
```

- To assign a name and description to the specified VLAN, enter the following commands in VLAN Configuration mode.

```
ProCurve(config-vlan-229)#name <string>  
ProCurve(config-vlan-229)#description <string>
```

- To set the Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU) size on this VLAN, enter.

```
ProCurve(config-vlan-229)#mtu <mtu-val>
```

Adding Ports to a VLAN

To configure a port that belongs only to one VLAN (that is, a port that sends out untagged packets), use the **switchport** command in Interface Configuration mode:

```
ProCurve(config-if)#switchport mode access
```

To configure VLAN trunk ports, (that is, ports that send out tagged packets to multiple VLANs), enter:

```
ProCurve(config-if)#switchport mode trunk
```

To designate trunk VLANs or add a port to a native VLAN, enter:

```
ProCurve(config-if)#switchport trunk-vlans <VLAN ID>
```

Note

A native VLAN is the destination VLAN used for untagged packets.

The Default VLAN and Trunk and Access Port Behavior

When configuring VLANs, keep these configuration guides in mind:

- All ports on the 8100fl switch belong to a default, non-configurable VLAN: VLAN 1.
- These ports will be access ports in shut mode.
- The 8100fl switch supports up to 252 layer-3 VLAN interfaces.

VLAN Nonstandard Defaults

The 8100fl switch maintains some default port behaviors for VLAN configurations that are not industry standard. Please note the following nonstandard defaults:

- The default status for a layer2 or layer3 port is shutdown. You must use the **no shutdown** command to enable these ports. You can verify a port's status by examining the running configuration to see if **no shutdown** appears for each port's configuration.
- The default status for a Layer 2 VLAN is **no shutdown**. You must use the **shutdown** command to turn it off. Because these VLANs are enabled by default, you will not see **no shutdown** statements in the running configuration file.

- The default status for a Layer 3 VLAN is **shutdown**. you must use the **no shutdown** command to enable these ports. You can verify a port's status by examining the running configuration to see if **no shutdown** appears for each port's configuration.

Note

The **shutdown** and **no shutdown** commands are not applicable to LAG definition (configured with the **aggregator** command) and VLAN definition (configured with the **vlan** command), but they are applicable to both LAG interfaces (configured with the **interface lag** command) and VLAN interfaces (configured with the **interface vlan** command).

Access Port Behavior

- When an access port is made a member of any other VLAN (**switchmode access vlan <vlan-id>**), it is removed from VLAN 1.
- If the port is deleted from the VLAN, it is made a member of VLAN 1 again.
- If you change an access port to a trunk port, the native VLAN on the trunk port is set to VLAN 1.
- You must configure a port with the **no shutdown** command before it becomes active.

Trunk Port Behavior

- To change a port from access mode to trunk mode, use the **switchport mode trunk** command for the desired interface
- Once the port is made the trunk, the native VLAN for the trunk port is set to be VLAN 1.
- To change the native VLAN for the trunk port using **switchport trunk-native-vlan <vlan-id>**, where VLAN-ID can be from 2-4094).
- If you do not need a native VLAN on the trunk port, use the command **switchport trunk-native-vlan disallow**. This will clear the trunk-native VLAN and the port will no longer accept any incoming untagged packets (untagged L2 control packets are fine). Use the command **no switchport trunk-native-vlan disallow** will set the native VLAN back to 1.
- Trunk port membership is established by using the command **switchport trunk-vlans <vlan-id>**, where VLAN-ID can be from 2-4094).
- Vlan 1 on trunk ports can be used only for native VLAN.
- If you change a trunk port to an access port, it is put in the default VLAN (VLAN 1).
- You must configure a port with the **no shutdown** command before it becomes active.

Monitoring VLANs

To display all VLANs that have been configured on the switch, enter the **show vlan** command.

Link Aggregation Configuration

Contents

Overview.....	7-2
Overview.....	7-2
Configuring Static Link Aggregations (LAG).....	7-3
Creating a LAG.....	7-3
Adding Physical Ports to the LAG.....	7-3
Link Aggregation Port Limitations.....	7-3
Configuring Dynamic Link Aggregations (LACP).....	7-4
Configuring Link Aggregations.....	7-4
Creating the Aggregation.....	7-5
Specifying the System.....	7-5
Configuring the Port.....	7-5
Configuring the Partner System.....	7-6
Configuration Restrictions.....	7-6
LAG and LACP Configuration Example.....	7-7
Monitoring LAG and LACP.....	7-10
Monitoring LAG Configurations.....	7-10
Monitoring LACP.....	7-14

Overview

This chapter explains how to configure:

- A manual (or static) Link Aggregate Group (LAG) on the switch
- A dynamic link using Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP).

Link aggregation on the 8100fl switch has the following features and characteristics:

- Link aggregation performs load balancing (based on the aggregation hash applied on the ingress ports), and load sharing across a number of ports.
- Link aggregation builds high-performance, high-bandwidth links between ProCurve's switching platforms.
- A link aggregation is a group of two or more physical ports that have been combined into a single logical port.
- Multiple physical connections between devices are aggregated into a single, logical, high-speed path that acts as a single link.
- As flows are set up on the LAG, traffic is balanced across all ingress ports in the combined link, balancing overall available bandwidth.
- Link aggregations also provide improved data link resiliency—if one link fails, its flows are distributed among the remaining links.
- Link aggregations can interoperate with switches, routers, and servers from other vendors.
- Link aggregations allow administrators to increase bandwidth at congestion points in the network, eliminating potential traffic bottlenecks.
- Link aggregations are compatible with all switch features, including VLANs, STP, VRRP, and so on. In fact, switch link aggregation supports the bridging of any type of traffic, including protocols not currently supported. Non-IP traffic is passed using the source and destination MAC headers. IP traffic is passed on L2, L3, or L4 header information.

Note

The hash function distributes traffic making sure that each traffic stream uses the same link so packets do not have to be reordered. At Layer 2, a hash function is applied to the SMAC, DMAC addresses and vid. At Layer 3, hashing is based on the IPv4 source address and IPv4 destination address fields. The 8100fl switch also supports hashing based on Layer 4 SP and DP fields of the frame. You can configure hashing independently of the LAG mode; for example, you can use L4-based hashing on an L2 LAG.

Configuring Static Link Aggregations (LAG)

The steps for creating and configuring a manual or static link aggregation are:

1. Create a LAG.
2. Add physical ports to the LAG.

Creating a LAG

When creating a LAG, assign an ID to the LAG. Here is an example of creating a LAG with the ID of 11:

```
ProCurve(config)#aggregator 11
```

Adding Physical Ports to the LAG

You can add any number of 100/1000 Ethernet ports to a link aggregation, and ports can span across any number of interface modules. If one link should go down, traffic is redirected seamlessly to the remaining operational links.

Here is an example of adding port **gigabitethernet 2/5** to LAG 11:

```
ProCurve(config)#interface gig 2/5  
ProCurve(config-interface-gig2/5)#lag 11
```

Repeat these commands for each port you want to add to a specific LAG.

To remove a port from a LAG use the **no lag** command. For example:

```
ProCurve(config)#interface gig 2/5  
ProCurve(config-interface-gig2/5)#no lag 11
```

Link Aggregation Port Limitations

Ports added to a link aggregation must meet the following criteria:

- Running in full duplex mode
- Be a member of the default VLAN—VLAN 1 (applies to LACP LAGs only)
- Ethernet
- Configured with the same bandwidth

Configuring Dynamic Link Aggregations (LACP)

To configure and maintain a link aggregation group automatically, you must use 802.3ad LACP, which is supported on the switch. This protocol can detect the presence and capabilities of other aggregation capable devices automatically. In other words, using LACP, you can specify which links in a system can be aggregated.

The link aggregation is treated as the aggregator. The aggregator presents a standard IEEE 802.3 service interface and communicates with the MAC client. The aggregator binds to one or more ports, is responsible for distributing frames from a MAC client to its attached ports, and for collecting received frames from the ports and passing them to the MAC client transparently.

You can enable LACP on all Fast Ethernet, Gigabit Ethernet, and TenGigabit Ethernet ports on the switch. LACP ports exchange LACP Protocol Data Units (PDUs) with their peers and form one or more link aggregations. (This PDU traffic comes at the expense of data traffic. For this reason, manual LAG may be a better aggregation technology alternative to dynamic aggregation.)

After joining an aggregation, the port attaches to an appropriate aggregator. The benefit of being able to aggregate links using a combination of these same speed Ethernet ports on a single logical link is that it increases the options available when you have one remaining gigabit port and a number of 100M bit/sec ports available between switches. Network traffic is distributed across ports dynamically, so administration of what data actually flows across which port is managed within the aggregated link automatically. As with manual link aggregation, traffic is balanced by assigning flows to the least-used ingress ports in the aggregation.

Configuring Link Aggregations

To create and configure dynamic LAG, take the following steps:

1. Create the aggregation.
2. Specify the system.
3. Specify how flows are allocated on the LAG's ports.
4. Define the partner system LAG parameters.

Creating the Aggregation

The first thing you must do in creating a dynamic aggregation is to define the aggregation. Do this by entering from Configuration mode:

```
ProCurve(config)#aggregator <aggregator ID number>
```

Specifying the System

1. To specify the system priority value for each host, from Configuration mode enter:

```
ProCurve(config)#lacp sys-priority 5
```

2. Repeat for the partner host.

Configuring the Port

1. To specify the 802.3ad parameters to define the port properties, from Interface Configuration mode for the port enter:

```
ProCurve(config-if)#lacp activity  
ProCurve(config-if)#lacp aggregation  
ProCurve(config-if)#lacp port-key <number>  
ProCurve(config-if)#lacp port-priority <number>  
ProCurve(config-if)#lacp timeout  
ProCurve(config-if)#lacp enable
```

2. To change the link-assignment algorithm, for instance, to L2 link aggregation and IP equal-cost multi-path (ECMP) routes, enter:

```
ProCurve(config-if)#aggr-mode {mac-based | l3-based |  
l4-based}
```

Note

The default link-assignment algorithm is Layer 3-based link assignment (l3-based).

3. Repeat for each port in the aggregation.

Configuring the Partner System

You have the option to configure the end-to-end specifications for the link aggregation. To do so, you must configure both ends of the links. For example, to configure a LAG with an ID of 13:

1. From Configuration mode on the 8100fl switch enter:

```
ProCurve(config)#aggregator 13
ProCurve(config-lag-13)#partner-sys-id <mac address>
ProCurve(config-lag-13)#partner-sys-priority <mac
address>
```

2. Repeat for the other system.

Configuration Restrictions

Keep the following parameter configuration requirements in mind when setting up an aggregation.

- Port's **port-key** value must be same as the aggregator's **actorkey** value
- Aggregator's **partnerkey** value must be the same as the port's **partnerkey** value
- Aggregator's **port-type** must be the same as the port's **port-type** (Fast Ethernet, Gigabit Ethernet, or TenGigabit Ethernet)
- Aggregator's **aggregation** setting must be the same as the port's **aggregation** setting (**aggregatable** or **individual**)
- If specified by the user, the aggregator's **partner-sys-priority** and **partner-sys-id** (MAC) must equal the port's **partner-sys-priority** and **partner-sys-id** (MAC).

Note

All ports on which LACP is enabled are devoted solely to LACP. All ports controlled by any aggregator must have the same bandwidth.

LAG and LACP Configuration Example

Figure 7-1 shows manual LAG11 connecting five ports on System Blue to five ports on System Red. It also shows LACP 22 connecting three ports on System Blue to three ports on System Red.

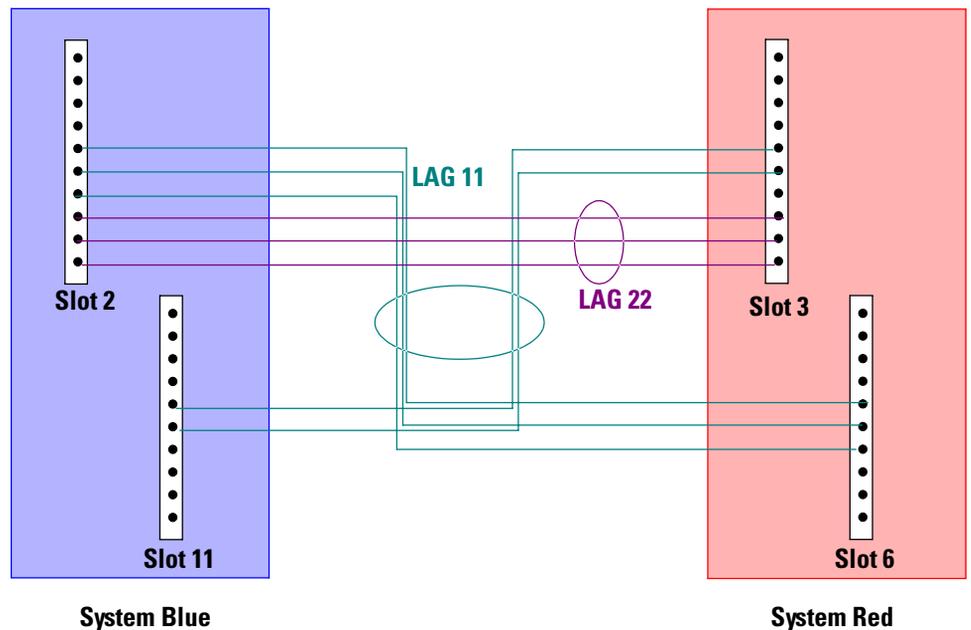


Figure 7-1. Link Aggregation Examples

Configuring A Manual Link Aggregation or LAG. In this example, the manual aggregator ID is set to 11, which becomes the LAG number assigned to System Blue's ports 5-7 of the Gigabit Ethernet ports on the interface module in slot 2, and to ports 5 and 6 on the interface module in slot 11. These ports connect to System Red's GigabitEthernet ports 5-7 on the interface module in slot 6, and to ports 5 and 6 on the interface module in slot 3.

Configuring LACP. The LACP aggregator ID is set to 22 and it describes the aggregation of ports 8-10 on the GigabitEthernet interface module in slot 2 on System Blue and connected to ports 8-10 on the GigabitEthernet interface module in slot 3 on System Red.

Figure 7-2 shows the configuration for these two aggregations on System Blue.

```
vlan 2-101
bridge stp
bridge-priority 1000
aggregator 11
aggregator 22
port-type gigetherenet actorkey 12 partnerkey 50
interface GigabitEthernet2/5
no shutdown
lag 11
interface GigabitEthernet2/6
no shutdown
lag 11
interface GigabitEthernet2/7
no shutdown
lag 11
interface GigabitEthernet2/8
lACP enable
lACP port-key 12
no shutdown
interface GigabitEthernet2/9
lACP enable
lACP port-key 12
no shutdown
interface GigabitEthernet2/10
lACP enable
lACP port-key 12
no shutdown
interface GigabitEthernet11/5
no shutdown
lag 11
interface GigabitEthernet11/6
no shutdown
lag 11
interface LAG11
switchport mode trunk
switchport trunk-vlans 2-101
stp enable
interface LAG22
aggr-mode mac-based
switchport mode trunk
switchport trunk-vlans 2-101
stp enable
```

Figure 7-2. System Blue Configuration for LAG Aggregation 11 and LACP Aggregation 22

Figure 7-3 shows the corresponding configuration on System Red.

```
vlan 2-101
bridge stp
bridge-priority 2000
aggregator 11
aggregator 22
port-type gigethernet actorkey 50 partnerkey 12
interface GigabitEthernet3/5
no shutdown
lag 11
interface GigabitEthernet3/6
no shutdown
lag 11
interface GigabitEthernet3/8
lACP enable
lACP port-key 50
no shutdown
interface GigabitEthernet3/9
lACP enable
lACP port-key 50
no shutdown
interface GigabitEthernet3/10
lACP enable
lACP port-key 50
no shutdown
interface GigabitEthernet6/5
no shutdown
lag 11
interface GigabitEthernet6/6
no shutdown
lag 11
interface GigabitEthernet6/7
no shutdown
lag 11
interface LAG11
switchport mode trunk
switchport trunk-vlans 2-101
stp enable
stp cost 10
interface LAG22
switchport mode trunk
switchport trunk-vlans 2-101
stp enable
```

Figure 7-3. System Red Configuration for LAG Aggregation 11 and LACP Aggregation 22

Monitoring LAG and LACP

The following section shows commands and examples to use to view LAG and LACP configuration information and statistics.

Monitoring LAG Configurations

The **show port summary** command displays information on LAG configurations (see the examples for details).

The following example displays the categories of information available for port assignments.

```
ProCurve#show port summary
N = Native VLAN, A = Access VLAN
Port   Admin Link  Mode  LAG VLAN-ID STP  Auto Duplex Bridge Speed
Gig2/1 Down  Down Accs  None 1(N)  Dis On   Full  Addr  1000
Gig2/2 Down  Down Accs  None 1(A)  Dis On   Full  Addr  1000
Gig2/3 Down  Down Accs  None 1(A)  Dis On   Full  Addr  1000
Gig2/4 Down  Down Accs  None 1(A)  Dis On   Full  Addr  1000
Gig2/5 Up    Up    Trnk  11   1(N)  STP On   Full  Addr  1000
Gig2/6 Up    Up    Trnk  11   1(N)  STP On   Full  Addr  1000
Gig2/7 Up    Up    Trnk  11   1(N)  STP On   Full  Addr  1000
Gig2/8 Up    Up    Trnk  22   1(N)  STP On   Full  Addr  1000
Gig2/9 Up    Up    Trnk  22   1(N)  STP On   Full  Addr  1000
Gig2/10 Up   Up    Trnk  22   1(N)  STP On   Full  Addr  1000
Gig11/1 Down  Down Accs  None 1(A)  Dis On   Full  Addr  1000
Gig11/2 Down  Down Accs  None 1(A)  Dis On   Full  Addr  1000
Gig11/3 Down  Down Accs  None 1(A)  Dis On   Full  Addr  1000
Gig11/4 Down  Down Accs  None 1(A)  Dis On   Full  Addr  1000
Gig11/5 Up    Up    Trnk  11   1(N)  STP On   Full  Addr  1000
Gig11/6 Up    Up    Trnk  11   1(N)  STP On   Full  Addr  1000
Gig11/7 Down  Down Accs  None 1(A)  Dis On   Full  Addr  1000
Gig11/8 Up    Down Accs  None 1(A)  Dis On   Full  Addr  1000
```

The following example displays the LAG attributes for LAGs.

```
ProCurve#show lag all-lags lag-tuples
LAG Tuple Ports
-----
[(1, 000a.af00.0dfe, 12, 0, 0), (255, --, 65535, 0, 0)]

Gig11/8
[(1, 000a.af00.0dfe, 12, 0, 0), (1, 000a.af00.50fe, 50, 0,
0)]

Gig2/8

Gig2/9

Gig2/10
[(1, 000a.af00.0dfe, 12, 0, 0), (1, 000a.af00.13fe, 13, 0,
0)]

Gig11/9

Gig11/10
```

The following example displays the categories of information available for LAG connections.

```
ProCurve#show lag all-lags connections
Lag Name Sport Handle Remote Switch Remote Port State Actor Key Partner Key
LAG.22 0x4072000000000000 000a.af00.50fe 0x148 Up 12 50
LAG.22 0x4082000000000000 000a.af00.50fe 0x149 Up 12 50
LAG.22 0x4092000000000000 000a.af00.50fe 0x14a Up 12 50
```

The following example displays the categories of information available for LAG member ports.

```
ProCurve#show lag all-lags member-ports
Lag Id Designated Port Member Ports Status
lag.11 Gig11/5          Gig2/5      enabled/up
                Gig2/6      enabled/up
                Gig2/7      enabled/up
                Gig11/5     enabled/up
                Gig11/6     enabled/up
Lag Id Designated Port Member Ports Status
lag.22 Gig2/10          Gig2/8      enabled/up
                Gig2/9      enabled/up
                Gig2/10     enabled/up
```

The following example displays the categories of information returned by the **show lag all-lag attributes** command for System Blue.

```
system_blue#show lag all-lags attributes
*****
LAG 11 attributes
*****
LAG Name : LAG11
Admin status : Up
Trunk status : Trunk
Native VLAN : 1
VLAN membership in : 101 VLANs (VLAN 1-101)
STP status : Enabled (VSTP 1)
Bridging Mode : Address Bridging
Aggr Mode : Layer 3
*****
LAG 22 attributes
*****
LAG Name : LAG22
Admin status : Up
Trunk status : Trunk
Native VLAN : 1
VLAN membership in : 101 VLANs (VLAN 1-101)
STP status : Enabled (VSTP 2)
Bridging Mode : Address Bridging
Aggr Mode : Layer 3
```

The following example displays the categories of information returned by the **show lag all-lag attributes** command for System Red.

```
system_red#show lag all-lag attributes
*****
LAG 11 attributes
*****
LAG Name : LAG11
Admin status : Up
Trunk status : Trunk
Native VLAN : 1
VLAN membership in : 101 VLANs (VLAN 1-101)
STP status : Enabled (VSTP 1)
Bridging Mode : Address Bridging
Aggr Mode : Layer 3
*****
LAG 22 attributes
*****
LAG Name : LAG22
Admin status : Up
Trunk status : Trunk
Native VLAN : 1
VLAN membership in : 101 VLANs (VLAN 1-101)
STP status : Enabled (VSTP 2)
Bridging Mode : Address Bridging
Aggr Mode : Layer 3
```

The following example displays the categories of information returned by the **show lag all-lag parameters** command for System Blue.

```
system_blue#show lag lag22 parameters
*****
LAG 22 parameters
*****
LAG Name : LAG22
Port Type : Gigabit Ethernet
Actor Key : 12
Partner Key : 50
Partner System Pri : 1
Partner System id : 000a.af00.50fe
Aggr Type : Aggregateable
```

The following example displays the categories of information returned by the **show lag all-lag parameters** command for System Red.

```
system_red#show lag lag22 parameters

*****
LAG 22 parameters
*****
LAG Name : LAG22
Port Type : Gigabit Ethernet
Actor Key : 50
Partner Key : 12
Partner System Pri : 1
Partner System id : 000a.af00.0dfe
Aggr Type : Aggregateable
```

Monitoring LACP

The **show lacp** command can be used to display information on LACP statistics and configurations (see the following examples for details).

The following example shows the information returned by the **show lacp <port> statistics** command for GigabitEthernet 5 on the interface module in slot 11.

```
ProCurve#show lacp gi 11/5 statistics

LACP statistics (Gig11/9) :
LACP Pdus sent: 2071
Marker Response Pdus sent: 0
LACP pdus received: 2069
Marker pdus received: 0
```

[Table 7-1](#) shows the information available from this command and explains the status being reported.

Table 7-1. show lacp <port> statistics

Fields	Description
LACP Pdus sent	The number of protocol data units sent on this interface since it was last activated.
Marker Response Pdus sent	The number of response protocol data units sent on this interface since it was last activated.

Table 7-1. show lacp <port> statistics

Fields	Description
LACP pdus received	The number of protocol data units received on this interface since it was last activated
Marker pdus received	The number of response protocol data units received on this interface since it was last activated.

The following example displays the categories of information returned by the **show lacp <port> protocol** command.

```
ProCurve#show lacp gi 2/9 protocol

port Gig2/9 LACP Protocol State:
  LACP State Machines:
    Receive FSM: Current State
    Mux FSM:      Collecting_Distributing State (LAG
0x8801080000000000 [0x21])
    Periodic Tx FSM: Fast Periodic State
  Control Variables
    BEGIN: FALSE
    LACP Up: TRUE
    Ready_N: TRUE
    Selected: SELECTED
    Port_moved: FALSE
    NTT: FALSE
    port_enabled: TRUE
    PartnerSync: TRUE
    PartnerCollect: TRUE
  Timer counters
    periodic tx timer: 1
    current while timer: 3
    wait while timer: 0
```

The following example displays the categories of information returned by the **show lacp <port> parameters** command.

```
ProCurve#show lacp gi 2/9 parameters
LACP parameters (Gig2/9) :
  Actor
    system priority:      1
    system mac addr:     000a.af00.0dfe
    port admin key:      12
    port oper key:       12
    port number:         1609
    port admin priority: 1
    port oper priority:  1
    LACP activity:       ACTIVE
    aggregation:         AGGREGATABLE
    timeout:             SHORT TIMEOUT
    synchronization:    TRUE
    collecting:          TRUE
    distributing:        TRUE
    defaulted:           FALSE
    expired:             FALSE
  Partner
    system priority:      1
    system mac addr:     000a.af00.13fe
    port oper key:       13
    port number:         643
    port priority:       1
    LACP activity:       ACTIVE
    aggregation:         AGGREGATABLE
    timeout:             SHORT TIMEOUT
    synchronization:    TRUE
    collecting:          TRUE
    distributing:        TRUE
    defaulted:           FALSE
    expired:             FALSE
```

QoS Configuration

Contents

Overview.....	8-2
Basic QoS Operation	8-2
Connecting Ingress and Egress Traffic	8-3
Using QoS Commands	8-4
Spolicy Input Commands	8-4
Spolicy Output Commands	8-4
Differentiated Class	8-5
Random Detection	8-5
Differential Class Group	8-7
Interface Commands	8-8
QoS Example	8-8

Overview

The 8100fl switch was designed with Quality of Service (QoS) in mind. QoS is performed globally and centrally by a scheduler that sees all the queues and all the priorities for every port. Therefore, the switch only has to queue traffic once on ingress to schedule traffic through the system, with the result that wire speed performance is not compromised.

The switch can guarantee bandwidth on an application by application basis, thus accommodating high-priority traffic even during peak periods of usage. QoS policies can be broad enough to encompass all the applications in the network, or relate specifically to a single host-to-host application flow.

Basic QoS Operation

The basic mechanism of QoS is to classify all traffic (in and out), then create policies to act on these classifications. The classification process uses what is known as a *class map*; and the policy process uses what is known as the *policy map*.

In addition to the classifier, there is a *bandwidth manager*, and a *WRED* (Weighted Random Early Detection) *engine*. Once you create a class map and a policy map, you attach the policy map to an incoming (ingress) port or outgoing (egress) port – or interface.

For the 8100fl switch, the QoS classifier processes incoming (ingress) traffic. The bandwidth manager and the WRED engine process outgoing (egress) traffic. The 8100fl switch also applies special policies on egress using **policy** commands.

The classifier engine enforces syntax for the policy map statement (what you see is what you get) making it very easy to use.

These processes are illustrated in [Figure 8-1](#).

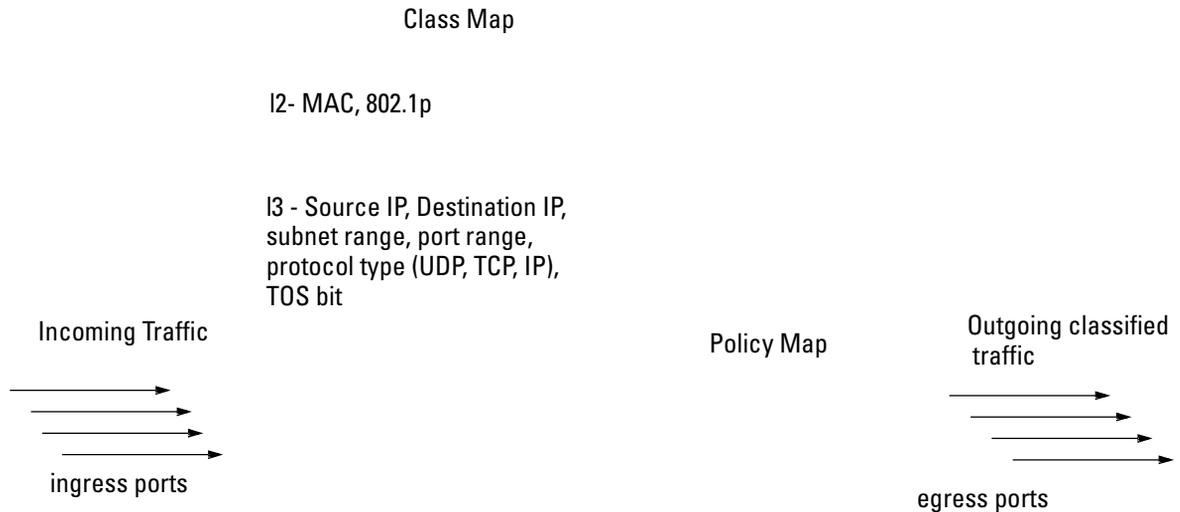


Figure 8-1. The QoS Classifier

Connecting Ingress and Egress Traffic

All incoming traffic is sorted into five queues or forwarding paths that can be controlled separately. Each queue allows for a different quality of service and provides a specific type of treatment to traffic. All traffic on a single queue is treated the same.

These five queues or levels are:

- EF (the priority queue)
- DF (default forwarding)
- AF1
- AF2
- AF3

You can customize any of these queues, although EF is the most restrictive. You can also configure the drop packet probabilities (1, 2, or 3) for the AF queues.

Using QoS Commands

This section explains the QoS commands available in this release.

Spolicy Input Commands

To access the special policy input mode, enter from Configuration mode:

```
ProCurve(config)#spolicy-input-map <traffic policy name>
```

To access the spolicy input mode **map** command, enter from Policy Map Configuration mode:

```
ProCurve(config-spimap)#map <cos|ip-dscp|ip-precedence> <value>
```

where *cos* <value> matches the 802.1p Class of Service bits (0-7);
ip-dscp <value> matches the Differentiated Services Code Point bit (0 to 63);
and *ip-precedence* <value> matches the IP precedence (0-7).

Note

When both *cos* and *ip-dscp* are configured, *ip-dscp* takes higher precedence and mapping will be done based on *ip-dscp*.

Spolicy Output Commands

To access the special policy output mode, enter from Configuration mode:

```
ProCurve(config)#spolicy-output-map <traffic policy name>
```

The special policy output map mode controls access to four key QoS commands:

diff-class allows you to specify a diff-serv class and places you in the special output map differentiated class mode.

diff-group allows you to specify a diff-serv class group and places you in the special output map differentiated class group mode.

remap allows you to change the *cos*, *ip-dscp*, or *ip-precedence* setting on various diff-serv classes.

Differentiated Class

To configure a differentiated class, enter from Special Output Map mode

```
diff-class <diff-serv class>
```

where diff-serv-class is one of the following values:

- af11—Assured Forwarding Class 1—drop probability 1
- af12—Assured Forwarding Class 1—drop probability 2
- af13—Assured Forwarding Class 1—drop probability 3
- af21—Assured Forwarding Class 1—drop probability 1
- af22—Assured Forwarding Class 1—drop probability 2
- af23—Assured Forwarding Class 1—drop probability 3
- af31—Assured Forwarding Class 1—drop probability 1
- af32—Assured Forwarding Class 1—drop probability 2
- af33—Assured Forwarding Class 1—drop probability 3
- df —Default Forwarding Class (aka best effort)
- ef—Expedited Forwarding Class (aka priority)

Random Detection

Random detection allows you to control queues by specifying:

- **min-queue-fill** (for the purpose of this discussion, call this A)
- **max-queue-fill** (call this B)
- **max-queue-prob** (call this C)

To configure random detection use the following command:

```
ProCurve(config-spomap-dc)#random-detect <min-queue-value>  
<max-queue-value> <max-queue-prob in %>
```

where **min-queue-fill** is expressed as an integer from 0 to 255 representing queue depth. This parameter is the threshold at which WRED (Weighted Random Early Detection, or random detection) is invoked. If you specify 0, WRED will always be on, If you specify 255, WRED will only be called when the queue is already full.

The **max-queue-fill** parameter is the other end of variable A and it works with the **max-queue-prob** parameter to determine at what queue saturation level packets are dropped all the time. Essentially, these B and C variables constitute coordinates on an xy plane as illustrated in Figure 8-2. The slope of your random detection algorithm is determined at one end by where you place A, and at the other end where C and B meet.

Note

Queue depths (variables A and B) are expressed in terms of a percentage of 256. Therefore 25% of 256 is 64 and 75% is 192. Queue probability (variable C) is simply a percentage.

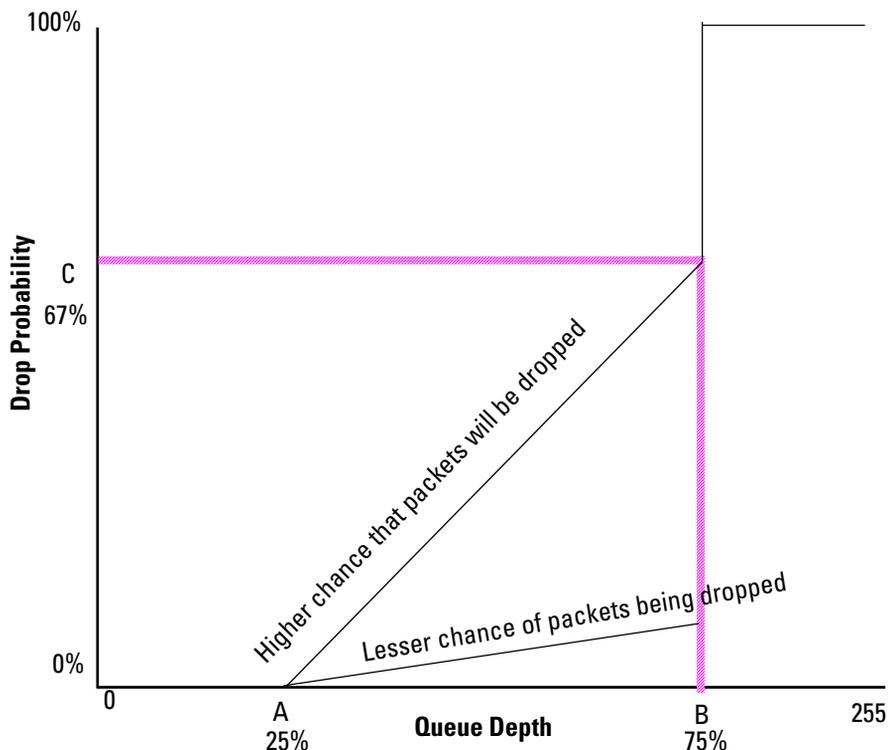


Figure 8-2. Calculating Random Detect Limits

In [Figure 8-2](#), C represents the drop probability on a scale from 0 to 100%. A is the amount of queue that is full before WRED is invoked. And B is the amount of queue that is filled beyond which the drop probability is 100%.

In this mode, you can configure the **random-detect** command. This command configures how full the queue needs to be before the queue engine applies, at what point the drop probability is 1, and what the drop probability percentage is when the queue is full.

For example, if you want to invoke WRED when the queue is approximately 25% full, assign the drop probability to 1 when the queue is approximately 75% full, and drop all packets when the queue is completely full (drop probability is 100%), you would enter:

```
ProCurve(config-spomap-dc)#random-detect 64 192 100
```

Differential Class Group

To configure differentiated class groups, enter from Special Output Map mode

```
ProCurve(config-spomap)#diff-group <diff-class group>
```

There are five diff-class groups:

- af1x—Assured Forwarding Class 1
- af2x—Assured Forwarding Class 2
- af3x—Assured Forwarding Class 3
- df —Default Forwarding Class (aka best effort)
- ef—Expedited Forwarding Class (aka priority)

To configure Assured Forwarding Class 3 as the diff-class group, enter:

```
ProCurve(config-spomap)#diff-group af3x
```

In the differentiated class group mode, you can use the **bandwidth** command to configure guaranteed bandwidth for traffic in this diff-class group. For example, to guarantee that 75% of bandwidth will be available for this diff-class group, enter:

```
ProCurve(config-spomap-dcg)#bandwidth percent 75
```

You can guarantee a specific amount of the 10Gbps bandwidth (in Kbps). For example, if you want to guarantee at least 2,500,000 kbps, enter

```
ProCurve(config-spomap-dcg)#bandwidth bandwidth 2500000
```

Interface Commands

The QoS traffic policy maps you create must be attached to an interface before they can process incoming traffic. For example, to define a service policy from an interface (Ethernet, GigabitEthernet, TenGigabitEthernet, etc.), enter:

```
ProCurve(config-if)#service-policy <input | input-  
smap | output-smap> <name>
```

where *input* applies the named traffic policy, *input-smap* applies the named input traffic policy, and *output-smap* applies the named output traffic policy to this interface.

QoS Example

In the example shown in [Figure 8-3](#), incoming packets arrive at a 8100fl switch on the edge of a diff-serv domain and are routed to a 8100fl switch in the core of the diff-serve domain. The ToS bit setting determines the priority handling through the domain and the switch processes the necessary queuing.

Consider how two packets (1 and 2) which arrive with ToS bits set to 7 and 8 respectively, are processed:

1. Packet 1 is assigned to AF1
2. Packet 2 is assigned to AF2.
3. The edge 8100fl switch routes the packets to the core 8100fl switch.
4. The core switch routes the packets to the diff-serv domain which knows how to route these packets to meet the requirements of the ToS bit.
5. The packets are assigned to different queues (2 and 4) reflecting their different service requirements and so are routed over different paths through the diff-serv domain.

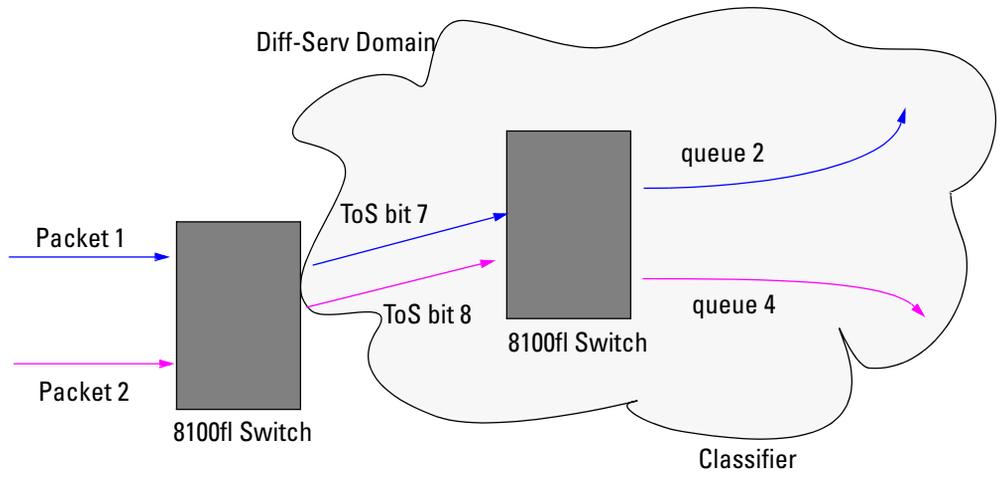


Figure 8-3. QoS Example

— *This page is intentionally unused.* —

Spanning-Tree Operation

Contents

Overview	9-2
802.1s Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol (MSTP)	9-4
MSTP Structure	9-5
Terminology	9-6
How MSTP Operates	9-8
MST Regions	9-8
Regions, Legacy STP and RSTP Switches, and the Common Spanning Tree (CST)	9-10
MSTP Operation with 802.1Q VLANs	9-10
Operating Rules	9-11
Transitioning from STP or RSTP to MSTP	9-13
Tips for Planning an MSTP Application	9-13
Configuring MSTP	9-15
Configuring MSTP Operation Mode and Global Parameters	9-17
Configuring Basic Port Connectivity Parameters	9-19
Configuring MST Instance Parameters	9-22
Configuring MST Instance Per-Port Parameters	9-25
Enabling or Disabling Spanning Tree Operation	9-27
MSTP Show Commands and Troubleshooting	9-28
Displaying MSTP Statistics	9-28
Displaying Statistics for a Specific MST Instance	9-30
Displaying the MSTP Configuration	9-31
Displaying MAC Table Information	9-31
Operating Notes	9-32
Troubleshooting	9-32

Overview

Spanning tree is used to prevent network loops. Without spanning tree it is possible to have more than one active path to a destination, which can result in duplication of messages, leading to a “broadcast storm” that can bring down the network. This chapter describes the application of the Multiple Spanning-Tree Protocol (MSTP) on the 8100fl switch, and how to configure it with the switch’s built-in interfaces. MSTP extends the Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) and the Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP) and is backwards compatible with both versions.

Note

For more information on interoperability with RSTP and STP devices, see [“Transitioning from STP or RSTP to MSTP” on page 9-13](#).

MSTP Features

802.1s Spanning Tree Protocol	Default	Page Ref
Viewing MSTP Status and Configuration	n/a	page 9-28
Enable/Disable MSTP and Configure Global Parameters	Disabled	page 9-17
Configuring Basic Port Connectivity Parameters	edge-port: No mcheck: Yes hello-time: 2 path-cost: auto point-to-point MAC: Force-True priority: 128 (multiplier: 8)	page 9-19 and following
Configuring MSTP Instance Parameters	instance (MSTPI): none priority: 32768 (multiplier: 8)	page 9-22
Configuring MSTP Instance Per-Port Parameters	Auto	page 9-25
Enabling/Disabling MSTP Operation	Disabled	page 9-27

Multiple-Instance spanning tree operation (802.1s) ensures that only one active path exists between any two nodes in a spanning-tree *instance*. A spanning-tree instance comprises a unique set of VLANs, and belongs to a specific spanning-tree *region*. A region can comprise multiple spanning-tree instances (each with a different set of VLANs), and allows one active path among regions in a network. Applying VLAN tagging to the ports in a multiple-instance spanning-tree network enables blocking of redundant links in one instance while allowing forwarding over the same links for non-redundant use by another instance.

For example, suppose you have three switches in a region configured with VLANs grouped into two instances, as follows:

VLANs	Instance 1	Instance 2
10, 11, 12	Yes	No
20, 21, 22	No	Yes

The logical and physical topologies resulting from these VLAN/Instance groupings result in blocking on different links for different VLANs:

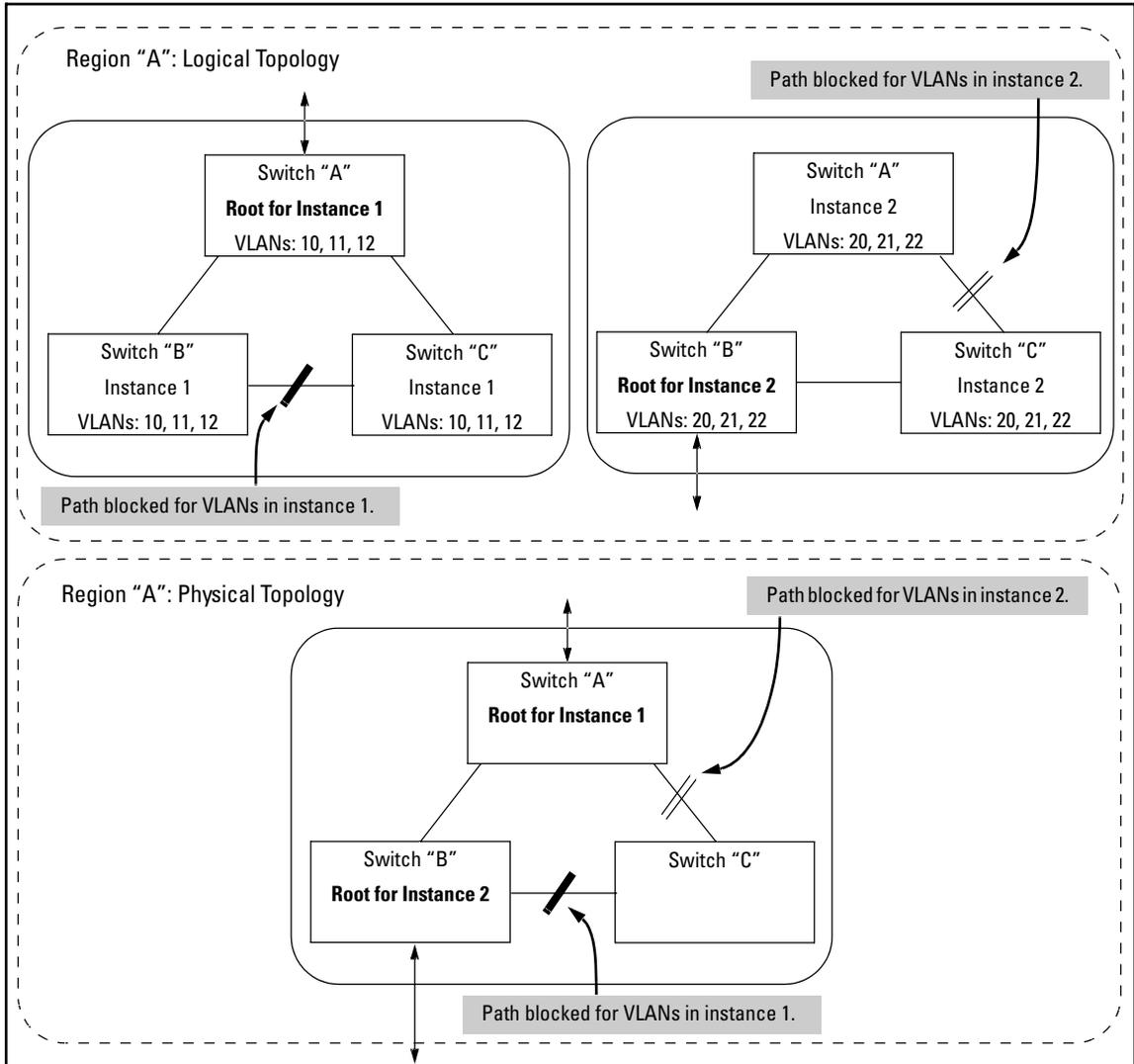


Figure 9-1. Example of a Multiple Spanning-Tree Application

802.1s Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol (MSTP)

The 802.1D and 802.1w spanning tree protocols operate without regard to a network's VLAN configuration, and maintain one common spanning tree throughout a bridged network. Thus, these protocols map one loop-free, logical topology on a given physical topology. The 802.1s Multiple Spanning Tree protocol (MSTP) uses VLANs to create multiple spanning trees in a network, which significantly improves network resource utilization while maintaining a loop-free environment.

While the per-VLAN spanning tree approach adopted by some vendors overcomes the network utilization problems inherent in using STP or RSTP, using a per-VLAN technology with multiple VLANs can overload the switch's CPU. MSTP on the 8100fl switch complies with the IEEE 802.1s standard, and extends STP and RSTP functionality to map multiple independent spanning tree instances onto a physical topology. With MSTP, each spanning tree instance can include one or more VLANs and applies a separate, per-instance forwarding topology. Thus, where a port belongs to multiple VLANs, it may be dynamically blocked in one spanning tree instance, but forwarding in another instance. This achieves load-balancing across the network while keeping the switch's CPU load at a moderate level (by aggregating multiple VLANs in a single spanning tree instance).

MSTP provides fault tolerance through rapid, automatic reconfiguration if there is a failure in a network's physical topology. With MSTP-capable switches, you can create a number of MST regions containing multiple spanning tree instances. This requires the configuration of a number of MSTP-capable switches. However, it is NOT necessary to do this. You can just enable MSTP on an MSTP-capable switch and a spanning tree instance is created automatically. This instance always exists by default when spanning tree is enabled, and is the spanning tree instance that communicates with STP and RSTP environments.

Caution

Because the switch automatically gives faster links a higher priority, the default MSTP parameter settings are usually adequate for spanning tree operation. Also, because incorrect MSTP settings can adversely affect network performance, you should not change the default values unless you have a strong understanding of how spanning tree operates.

For MSTP information beyond what is provided in this manual, refer to the IEEE 802.1s standard.

MSTP Structure

MSTP maps active, separate paths through separate spanning tree instances and between MST regions. Each MST region comprises one or more MSTP switches. Note that MSTP recognizes an STP or RSTP LAN as a distinct spanning-tree region.

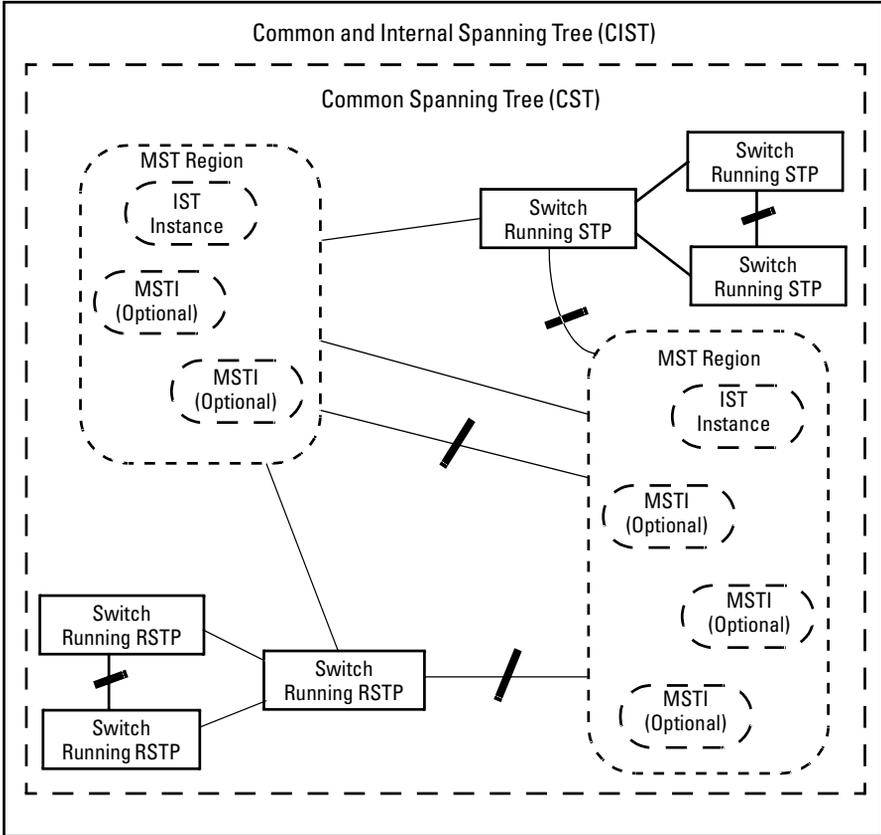


Figure 9-2. Example of MSTP Network with Legacy STP and RSTP Devices Connected

Terminology

Bridge: See “MSTP Bridge”.

Common and Internal Spanning Tree (CIST): Comprises all LANs, STP, and RSTP bridges and MSTP regions in a network. The CIST automatically determines the MST regions in a network and defines the root bridge (switch) and designated port for each region. The CIST includes the Common Spanning Tree (CST), the Internal Spanning Tree (IST) within each region, and any multiple spanning-tree instances (MSTIs) in a region.

Common Spanning Tree (CST): Administers the connectivity among the MST regions, STP LANs, and RSTP LANs in a bridged network. CST refers to the single forwarding path the switch calculates for STP (802.1D) and RSTP (802.1w) topologies, and for inter-regional paths in MSTP (802.1s) topologies. Note that all three versions of spanning tree can interoperate in the same network. Also, the MSTP switch interprets a device running 802.1D STP or 802.1w RSTP as a separate region. (Refer to figure 9-2 on page 5.)

Internal Spanning Tree (IST): When you configure a switch for MSTP operation, the switch automatically includes all of the static VLANs configured on the switch in a single, active spanning tree topology (instance) within the IST. This is termed the “IST instance”. Any VLANs you subsequently configure on the switch are added to this IST instance. To create separate forwarding paths within a region, group specific VLANs into different Multiple Spanning Tree Instances (MSTIs). (Refer to “Multiple Spanning Tree Instance”, below.)

Multiple Spanning Tree Instances: A multiple spanning tree network comprises separate spanning-tree instances existing in an MST region. (There can be multiple regions in a network.) Each instance defines a single forwarding topology for an exclusive set of VLANs. By contrast, an STP or RSTP network has only one spanning tree instance for the entire network, and includes all VLANs in the network. (An STP or RSTP network operates as a single-instance network.) A region can include two types of STP instances:

- **Internal Spanning-Tree Instance (IST Instance):** This is the default spanning tree instance in any MST region. It provides the root switch for the region and comprises all VLANs configured on the switches in the region that are not specifically assigned to Multiple Spanning Tree Instances (MSTIs, described below). All VLANs in the IST instance of a region are part of the same, single spanning tree topology, which allows only one forwarding path between any two nodes belonging to any of the VLANs included in the IST instance. All switches in the region must belong to the set of VLANs that comprise the IST instance.

- **MSTI (Multiple Spanning Tree Instance):** This type of configurable spanning tree instance comprises all static VLANs you specifically assign to it, and must include at least one VLAN. The VLAN(s) you assign to an MSTI must initially exist in the IST instance of the same MST region. When you assign a static VLAN to an MSTI, the switch removes the VLAN from the IST instance. (Thus, you can assign a VLAN to only one MSTI in a given region.) All VLANs in an MSTI operate as part of the same single spanning tree topology. (The switch does not allow dynamic VLANs in an MSTI.)

MSTP (Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol): A network supporting MSTP allows multiple spanning tree instances within configured regions, and a single spanning tree among regions, STP bridges, and RSTP bridges.

MSTP BPDU (MSTP Bridge Protocol Data Unit): These BPDUs carry region-specific information, such as the region identifier (region name and revision number). If a switch receives an MSTP BPDU with a region identifier that differs from its own, then the port on which that BPDU was received is on the boundary of the region in which the switch resides.

MSTP Bridge: In this manual, an MSTP bridge is a 8100fl switch (or another 802.1s-compatible device) configured for MSTP operation.

MST Region: An MST region comprises the VLANs configured on physically connected MSTP switches. All switches in a given region must be configured with the same VLANs and Multiple Spanning Tree Instances (MSTIs). The MST region forms a multiple spanning tree domain and is a component of a single spanning-tree domain within a network. For switches internal to the MST region:

- All switches have identical MST configuration identifiers (region name and revision number).
- All switches have identical VLAN assignments to the region's IST and (optional) MST instances.
- One switch functions as the designated bridge (IST root) for the region.
- No switch has a point-to-point connection to a bridging device that cannot process RSTP BPDUs.

Caution

When you enable MSTP on the switch, the default MSTP spanning tree configuration settings comply with the values recommended in the IEEE 802.1s MSTP standard. Note that inappropriate changes to these settings can result in severely degraded network performance. For this reason, *ProCurve strongly recommends that changing these default settings be reserved only for experienced network administrators who have a strong understanding of the IEEE 802.1D/w/s standards and operation.*

How MSTP Operates

In the factory default configuration, spanning tree operation is off. Also, the switch retains its currently configured spanning tree parameter settings when disabled. Thus, if you disable spanning tree, then later re-enable it, the parameter settings will be the same as before spanning tree was disabled.

Note

The switch automatically senses port identity and type, and automatically defines spanning-tree parameters for each type, as well as parameters that apply across the switch. Although these parameters can be adjusted, *ProCurve strongly recommends leaving these settings in their default configurations unless the proposed changes have been supplied by an experienced network administrator who has a strong understanding of the IEEE 802.1D/w/s standards and operation.*

MST Regions

All MSTP switches in a given region must be configured with the same VLANs. Also, each MSTP switch within the same region must have the same VLAN-to-instance assignments. (A VLAN can belong to only one instance within any region.) Within a region:

- All of the VLANs belonging to a given instance compose a single, active spanning-tree topology for that instance.
- Each instance operates independently of other regions.

Between regions there is a single, active spanning-tree topology.

How Separate Instances Affect MSTP Operation. Assigning different groups of VLANs to different instances ensures that those VLAN groups use independent forwarding paths. For example, in figure 9-3 each instance has a different forwarding path.

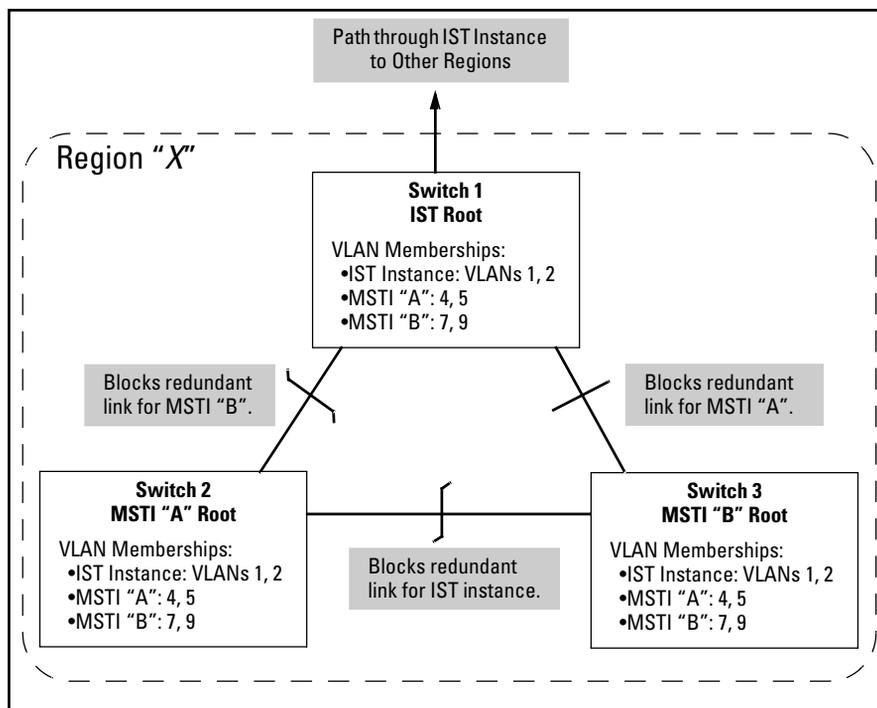


Figure 9-3. Active Topologies Built by Three Independent MST Instances

While allowing only one active path through a given instance, MSTP retains any redundant physical paths in the instance to serve as backups (blocked) paths in case the existing active path fails. Thus, if an active path in an instance fails, MSTP automatically activates (unblocks) an available backup to serve as the new active path through the instance for as long as the original active path is down. Note also that a given port may simultaneously operate in different states (forwarding or blocking) for different spanning-tree instances within the same region. This depends on the VLAN memberships to which the port is assigned. For example, if a port belongs to VLAN 1 in the IST instance of a region and also belongs to VLAN 4 in MSTI "x" in the same region, the port may apply different states to traffic for these two different instances.

Within a region, traffic routed between VLANs in separate instances can take only one physical path. To ensure that traffic in all VLANs within a region can travel between regions, all of the boundary ports for each region should belong to all VLANs configured in the region. Otherwise, traffic from some areas within a region could be blocked from moving to other regions.

Spanning-Tree Operation

802.1s Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol (MSTP)

All MSTP switches (as well as STP and RSTP switches) in a network use BPDUs (Bridge Protocol Data Units) to exchange information from which to build multiple, active topologies in the individual instances within a region and between regions. From this information:

- The MSTP switches in each LAN segment determine a designated bridge and designated port or trunk for the segment.
- The MSTP switches belonging to a particular instance determine the root bridge and root port or trunk for the instance.
- For the IST instance within a region, the MSTP switches linking that region to other regions (or to STP or RSTP switches) determine the IST root bridge and IST root port or trunk for the region. (For any Multiple Spanning-Tree instance—MSTI—in a region, the regional root may be a different switch that is not necessarily connected to another region.)
- The MSTP switches block redundant links within each LAN segment, across all instances, and between regions, to prevent any traffic loops.

As a result, each individual instance (spanning tree) within a region determines its regional root bridge, designated bridges, and designated ports or trunks.

Regions, Legacy STP and RSTP Switches, and the Common Spanning Tree (CST)

The IST instance and any MST instances in a region exist only within that region. Where a link crosses a boundary between regions (or between a region and a legacy STP or RSTP switch), traffic is forwarded or blocked as determined by the Common Spanning Tree (CST). The CST ensures that there is only one active path between any two regions, or between a region and a switch running STP and RSTP. (Refer to figure 9-2 on page 5.)

MSTP Operation with 802.1Q VLANs

As indicated in the preceding sections, within a given MST instance, a single spanning tree is configured for all VLANs included in that instance. This means that if redundant physical links exist in separate VLANs within the same instance, MSTP blocks all but one of those links. However, you can prevent the bandwidth loss caused by blocked redundant links for different VLANs in an instance by using a port trunk. The following example shows how you can use a port trunk with 802.1Q (tagged) VLANs and MSTP without unnecessarily blocking any links or losing any bandwidth.

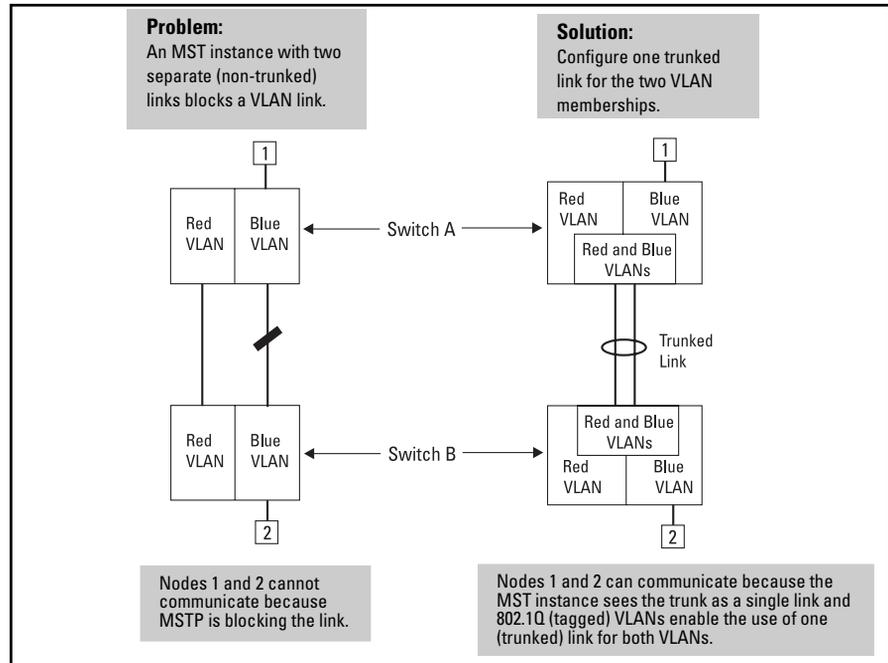


Figure 9-4. Example of Using a Trunked Link To Support Multiple VLAN Connectivity within the Same MST Instance

Note

All switches in a region should be configured with the VLANs used in that region, and all ports linking MSTP switches together should be members of all VLANs in the region. Otherwise, the path to the root for a given VLAN will be broken if MSTP selects a spanning tree through a link that does not include that VLAN.

Operating Rules

- All switches in a region must be configured with the same set of VLANs, as well as the same MST configuration name and MST configuration number.
- Within a region, a VLAN can be allocated to either a single MSTI or to the region's IST instance.
- All switches in a region must have the same VID-to-MST instance and VID-to-IST instance assignments.
- There is one root MST switch per configured MST instance.

Spanning-Tree Operation

802.1s Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol (MSTP)

- Within any region, the root switch for the IST instance is also the root switch for the region. Because boundary ports provide the VLAN connectivity between regions, all boundary ports on a region's root switch should be configured as members of all static VLANs defined in the region.
- There is one root switch for the Common and Internal Spanning Tree (CIST). Note that the per-port **hello-time** parameter assignments on the CIST root switch propagate to the ports on downstream switches in the network and override the **hello-time** configured on the downstream switch ports.
- Where multiple MST regions exist in a network, there is only one active, physical communication path between any two regions, or between an MST region and an STP or RSTP switch. MSTP blocks any other physical paths as long as the currently active path remains in service.
- Within a network, an MST region appears as a virtual RSTP bridge to other spanning tree entities (other MST regions, and any switches running 802.1D or 802.1w spanning-tree protocols).
- Within an MSTI, there is one spanning tree (one physical, communication path) between any two nodes. That is, within an MSTI, there is one instance of spanning tree, regardless of how many VLANs belong to the MSTI. Within an IST instance, there is also one spanning tree across all VLANs belonging to the IST instance.
- An MSTI comprises a unique set of VLANs and forms a single spanning-tree instance within the region to which it belongs.
- Communication between MST regions uses a single spanning tree.
- If a port on a switch configured for MSTP receives a legacy (STP/802.1D or RSTP/802.1w) BPDU, it automatically operates as a legacy port. In this case, the MSTP switch interoperates with the connected STP or RSTP switch as a separate MST region.
- Within an MST region, there is one logical forwarding topology per instance, and each instance comprises a unique set of VLANs. Where multiple paths exist between a pair of nodes using VLANs belonging to the same instance, all but one of those paths will be blocked for that instance. However, if there are different paths in different instances, all such paths are available for traffic. Separate forwarding paths exist through separate spanning tree instances.
- A port can have different states (forwarding or blocking) for different instances (which represent different forwarding paths).

Transitioning from STP or RSTP to MSTP

IEEE 802.1s MSTP includes RSTP functionality and is designed to be compatible with both IEEE 802.1D and 802.1w spanning-tree protocols. Even if all the other devices in your network are using STP, you can enable MSTP on the 8100fl switch. Also, using the default configuration values, your 8100fl switch will interoperate effectively with STP and RSTP devices. MSTP automatically detects when the switch ports are connected to non-MSTP devices in the spanning tree and communicates with those devices using 802.1D or 802.1w STP BPDU packets, as appropriate.

(For switches that do not support 802.1s/MSTP, ProCurve recommends that you update to RSTP to benefit from the convergence times of less than one second under optimal circumstances.) To make the best use of MSTP and achieve the fastest possible convergence times, there are some changes that you should make to the MSTP default configuration.

Note

Under some circumstances, the rapid state transitions employed by MSTP can increase the rates of frame duplication and misordering in the switched LAN. To allow MSTP switches to support applications and protocols that may be sensitive to frame duplication and misordering, set the Force Protocol Version parameter to **STP-compatible**. This allows MSTP to operate with rapid transitions disabled. The value of this parameter applies to all ports on the switch. See information on **force version** on page 9-18.

As indicated above, one of the benefits of MSTP and RSTP is the implementation of a larger range of port path-costs, which accommodates higher network speeds. New default values have also been implemented for the path-costs associated with the different network speeds. This can create some incompatibility between devices running the older 802.1D STP and your switch running MSTP or RSTP. See the [“Note on Path Cost” on page 9-14](#) for more information on adjusting to this incompatibility.

Tips for Planning an MSTP Application

- Ensure that the VLAN configuration in your network supports all of the forwarding paths necessary for the desired connectivity. All ports connecting one switch to another within a region and one switch to another between regions should be configured as members of all VLANs configured in the region.

Spanning-Tree Operation

802.1s Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol (MSTP)

- Plan individual regions based on VLAN groupings. That is, plan on all MSTP switches in a given region supporting the same set of VLANs. Within each region, determine the VLAN membership for each spanning-tree instance. (Each instance represents a single forwarding path for all VLANs in that instance.)
- There is one logical spanning-tree path through the following:
 - Any inter-regional links
 - Any IST or MST instance within a region
 - Any legacy (802.1D or 802.1w) switch or group of switches. (Where multiple paths exist between an MST region and a legacy switch, expect the CST to block all but one such path.)
- Determine the root bridge and root port for each instance.
- Determine the designated bridge and designated port for each LAN segment.
- Determine which VLANs to assign to each instance, and use port trunks with 802.1Q VLAN tagging where separate links for separate VLANs would result in a blocked link preventing communication between nodes on the same VLAN. (Refer to “MSTP Operation with 802.1Q VLANs” on page 9-10.)
- Identify the edge ports connected to end nodes and enable the edge-port setting for these ports. Leave the edge-port setting disabled for ports connected to another switch, a bridge, or a hub.

Note on Path Cost

RSTP and MSTP implement a greater range of path-costs and new default path-cost values to account for higher network speeds. These values are different than the values defined by 802.1D STP as shown below.

Port Type	802.1D STP Path Cost	RSTP and MSTP Path Cost
10 Mbps	100	2 000 000
100 Mbps	10	200 000
1 Gbps	5	20 000

Because the maximum value for the path-cost allowed by 802.1D STP is 65535, devices running that version of spanning tree cannot be configured to match the values defined by MSTP, at least for 10 Mbps and 100 Mbps ports. In LANs where there is a mix of devices running 802.1D STP, RSTP, and/or MSTP, you should reconfigure the devices so the path-costs match for ports with the same network speeds.

Configuring MSTP

This section outlines the general steps for configuring MSTP operation in your network, and assumes you have already planned and configured the VLANs you want MSTP to use. The actual MSTP parameter descriptions are in the following sections.

1. Configure MSTP global parameters. This step involves configuring the following:
 - Required parameters for MST region identity:
 - Region Name: **spanning-tree config-name** <name>
 - Region Revision Number: **spanning-tree config-revision** <revision>
 - Optional MSTP parameter changes for region settings:

ProCurve recommends that you leave these parameters at their default settings for most networks. Refer to the “Caution” on page 7.

 - The maximum number of hops before the MSTP BPDU is discarded (default: 20)
spanning-tree max-hops <hop-count>
 - Force-Version operation
spanning-tree force-version <rstp-operation | stp compatible | mstp operation>
 - Forward Delay
spanning-tree forward-delay <fwd-delay>
 - Hello Time (used if the switch operates as the root device.)
spanning-tree hello-time <hello_int>
 - Maximum age to allow for STP packets before discarding
spanning-tree maximum-age <max_age>
 - Device spanning-tree priority. Specifies the priority value used along with the switch MAC address to determine which device is root. The lowest priority value determines the root, with the MAC address operating as tie-breaker.
spanning-tree priority <priority_multiplier>

2. Configure MST instances.
 - Configure one instance for each VLAN group that you want to operate as an active topology within the region to which the switch belongs. When you create the instance, you should include a minimum of one VID. You can add more VIDs later if desired.

spanning-tree instance <mvst_instance>

To move a VLAN from one instance to another, first enter the configuration mode for that instance, and then unmap the member-vlan <vid>. For example, to unmap VLAN 15 from spanning tree instance 2, you would enter:

```
ProCurve(config)# spanning tree instance 2
    Enters configuration context for spanning-tree instance 2.
ProCurve(config-mst)#no member-vlan 15
    Unmaps VLAN 15 from spanning tree instance 2.
```

Next add the VLAN to the other instance by entering the spanning-tree instance configuration mode and then mapping the member-vlan <vid> to that instance. For example, to re-map VLAN 15 to spanning tree instance 3, you would enter:

```
ProCurve(config)# spanning tree instance 3
ProCurve(config-mst)#member-vlan 15
```

Note

When a VLAN is unmapped from an MSTI, it is associated with the Internal Spanning Tree (IST) instance. VLAN 1 is always associated with the IST instance and cannot be mapped to a new MSTI.

- Configure the priority from within the configuration mode for each instance.
priority <priority-multiplier>
3. Configure MST instance port parameters (within the interface configuration context for each port).
 - Enable **spanning-tree edge-port** for ports connected to end nodes (see [page 19](#)), but leave it disabled (the default) for connections to another switch, a bridge, or a hub.
 - Set the path-cost value for the port(s) used by a specific MST instance. Leaving this setting at the default auto allows the switch to calculate the path-cost from the link speed.
spanning-tree instance <instance-id> **path-cost** <cost>

Configuring MSTP Operation Mode and Global Parameters

The commands in this section apply on the switch level, and do not affect individual port configurations.

Command	Page
spanning-tree config-name < <i>ascii-string</i> >	9-17
spanning-tree config-revision < <i>revision-number</i> >	9-17
spanning-tree max-hops < <i>hop-count</i> >	9-18
spanning-tree force-version < stp-compatible rstp-operation mstp-operation >	9-18
spanning-tree hello-time < 1..10 >	9-18

Syntax: [no] spanning-tree config-name < *ascii-string* >

*This command resets the configuration name of the MST region in which the switch resides. This name can include up to 32 nonblank characters and is case-sensitive. On all switches within a given MST region, the configuration names must be identical. Thus, if you want more than one MSTP switch in the same MST region, you must configure the identical region name on all such switches. If you retain the default configuration name on a switch, it cannot exist in the same MST region with another switch. (Default Name: A text string using the hexadecimal representation of the switch's MAC address) The **no** form of the command overwrites the currently configured name with the default name.*

Note: *This option is available only when the switch is configured for MSTP operation. Also, there is no defined limit on the number of regions you can configure.*

Syntax: spanning-tree config-revision < *revision-number* >

This command configures the revision number you designate for the MST region in which you want the switch to reside. (Default is 0). This setting must be the same for all switches residing in the same region. Use this setting to differentiate between region configurations in situations such as the following:

- *Changing configuration settings within a region where you want to track the configuration versions you use*
- *Creating a new region from a subset of switches in a current region and want to maintain the same region name.*

Syntax: spanning-tree max-hops < hop-count >

This command resets the number of hops allowed for BPDUs in an MST region. When an MSTP switch receives a BPDU, it decrements the hop-count setting the BPDU carries. If the hop-count reaches zero, the receiving switch drops the BPDU. Note that the switch does not change the message-age and maximum-age data carried in the BPDU as it moves through the MST region and is propagated to other regions. (Range: 1 - 40; Default: 20)

Syntax: spanning-tree force-version < stp-compatible | rstp-operation | mstp-operation >

Sets the spanning-tree compatibility mode. When the switch is configured with MSTP mode, this command forces the switch to emulate behavior of earlier versions of spanning tree protocol or return to MSTP behavior. The command is useful in test or debug applications, and removes the need to reconfigure the switch for temporary changes in spanning-tree operation.

stp-compatible: *The switch applies 802.1D STP operation on all ports.*
rstp-operation: *The switch applies 802.1w operation on all ports except those ports where it detects a system using 802.1D Spanning Tree.*

mstp-operation: *The switch applies 802.1s MSTP operation on all ports where compatibility with 802.1D or 802.1w spanning tree protocols is not required.*

*This command is available when the protocol version is set to **mstp** (see 'protocol-version' above).*

*Note that even when mstp-operation is selected, if the switch detects an 802.1D BPDU or an 802.1w BPDU on a port, it communicates with the device linked to that port using STP or RSTP BPDU packets. Also, if errors are encountered as described in the "Note on Path Cost" on page 14, setting **force-version** to **stp-compatible** forces the MSTP switch to communicate out all ports using operations that are compatible with IEEE 802.1D STP.*

Syntax: spanning-tree hello-time < 1..10 >

*If MSTP is running and the switch is operating as the CIST root for your network, this command specifies the time in seconds between transmissions of BPDUs for all ports on the switch configured with the **Global** option. (the default). This parameter applies in MSTP, RSTP and STP modes. During MSTP operation, you can override this global setting on a per-port basis with this command:*

spanning-tree hello-time < 1..10 > (page 19). (Default: 2.)

Configuring Basic Port Connectivity Parameters

The following commands must be entered on a port-by-port basis within the interface configuration context. For example, to set the message transmission interval on port 1 of slot 5, you would first enter the interface context and then enter the configuration command.

```
ProCurve(config)# int gig 5/1
```

Enters interface-based configuration context for port 1 in slot 5.

```
ProCurve(config-interface-gig5/1)#spanning-tree hello-time 10
```

Sets message transmission interval on port 5/1 to 10 seconds.

Interface Configuration Command	Page
spanning-tree	
enable	below
edge-port	below
mcheck	20
hello-time < global 1..10 >	20
spanning-tree path-cost < auto 200000000 >	9-24
spanning-tree point-to-point-mac < force-true force-false auto >	9-23
spanning-tree priority <priority-multiplier>	9-23

The basic port connectivity parameters affect spanning-tree links at the global level. In most cases, ProCurve recommends that you use the default settings for these parameters and apply changes on a per-port basis only where a non-default setting is clearly indicated by the circumstances of individual links.

Syntax: [no] spanning-tree enable

*Enable spanning tree on this interface. (Default: **No** - disabled)*

Syntax: [no] spanning-tree < edge-port | mcheck >

[edge-port]

*Enable **edge-port** on ports connected to end nodes. During spanning tree establishment, ports with **edge-port** enabled transition immediately to the forwarding state. Disable this feature on any switch port that is connected to another switch, bridge, or hub. (Default: **No** - disabled)*

*The **no spanning-tree edge-port** command disables edge-port operation on the specified ports.*

[mcheck]

*Forces a port to send RSTP BPDUs for 3 seconds. This allows for another switch connected to the port and running RSTP to establish its connection quickly and for identifying switches running 802.1D STP. If the whole-switch force-version parameter is set to stp-compatible, the switch ignores the mcheck setting and sends 802.1D STP BPDUs out all ports. Disable this feature on all ports that are known to be connected to devices that are running 802.1D STP. (Default: **Yes** - enabled)
The **no spanning-tree mcheck** command disables mcheck.*

Syntax: spanning-tree < hello-time | path-cost | point-to-point-mac | priority >

[hello-time < global | 1 - 10 >]

*When the switch is the CIST root, this parameter specifies the interval (in seconds) between periodic BPDU transmissions by the designated port. This interval also applies to all ports in all switches downstream from the port. A setting of **global** indicates that the port(s) on the CIST root are using the value set by the global spanning-tree **hello-time** value (page 18). When a given switch "X" is not the CIST root, the per-port **hello-time** for all active ports on switch "X" is propagated from the CIST root, and is the same as the **hello-time** in use on the CIST root port in the currently active path from switch "X" to the CIST root. (That is, when switch "X" is not the CIST root, then the upstream CIST root's port **hello-time** setting overrides the **hello-time** setting configured on switch "X". (Default Per-Port setting: **Use Global**. Default Global Hello-Time: **2**)*

[path-cost < auto | 1..20000000 >]

Assigns an individual port cost that the switch uses to determine which ports are forwarding ports in a given spanning tree. In the default configuration (auto) the switch determines a port's path-cost by the port's speed:

- 100 Mbps: **200000**
- 1 Gbps: **20000**
- 10 Gbps: **2000**

Refer to "Note on Path Cost" on page 9-14 for information on compatibility with devices running 802.1D STP for the path-cost values (Default: Auto.).

[point-to-point-mac < force-true | force-false | auto >]

This parameter informs the switch of the type of device to which a specific port connects.

Force-True (default): Indicates a point-to-point link to a device such as a switch, bridge, or end-node.

Force-False: Indicates a connection to a hub (which is a shared LAN segment).

Auto: Causes the switch to set Force-False on the port if it is not running at full duplex. (Connections to hubs are half-duplex.)

[priority < priority-multiplier>]

MSTP uses this parameter to determine the port(s) to use for forwarding. The port with the lowest priority number has the highest priority. The range is 0 to 240, and is configured by specifying a multiplier in the range of 0 - 15. That is, when you specify a priority multiplier of 0 - 15, the actual priority assigned to the switch is:

$$(priority-multiplier) \times 16$$

*For example, if you configure "2" as the priority multiplier on a given port, then the actual **Priority** setting is 32. Thus, after you specify the port priority multiplier, the switch displays the actual port priority (and not the multiplier) in the **show spanning-tree** or **show spanning-tree <interface-id>** displays.*

*You can view the actual multiplier setting for ports by executing **show running** and looking for an entry in this format:*

```
spanning-tree priority < priority-multiplier >
```

*For example, configuring port Gig5/2 with a priority multiplier of "3" results in this line in the **show running** output:*

```
int Gig5/2
spanning-tree priority 3
```

Configuring MST Instance Parameters

The commands in this section apply on the switch level, and do not affect individual port configurations. Those commands listed as belonging to the spanning tree instance context must be entered within the instance configuration context. For example, to map a VLAN to a spanning tree instance, you must first enter the appropriate instance configuration mode before you can map the member-vlan <vid> to that instance. For example, to map VLAN 15 to spanning tree instance 2, you would enter:

```
ProCurve(config)# spanning tree instance 2
```

Enters configuration context for spanning-tree instance 2.

```
ProCurve(config-mst)#member-vlan 15
```

Maps VLAN 15 to spanning tree instance 2.

Configuration Context	Command	Page
Global Configuration: ProCurve (config)#	[no] spanning-tree instance <0..16 >	below
Global Configuration: ProCurve (config)#	spanning-tree priority <0..15 >	9-24
Spanning Tree Instance: ProCurve (config-mst)#	[no] member-vlan <vid>	9-23
Spanning Tree Instance: ProCurve (config-mst)#	priority <0..15 >	9-24

Syntax: [no] spanning-tree instance <1..16 >

*This command creates a new MST instance (MSTI). You can create up to 16 MSTIs in a region. The **no** form of the command deletes the specified MSTI.*

Note: *Configuring MSTP on the switch automatically configures the IST instance and places all statically configured VLANs on the switch into the IST instance. For details on mapping a VLAN to a specific spanning tree instance, see the member-vlan command on page 23.*

Syntax: spanning-tree priority < priority-multiplier >

Every switch running an instance of MSTP has a Bridge Identifier, which is a unique identifier that helps distinguish this switch from all others. The switch with the lowest Bridge Identifier is elected as the root for the tree.

The Bridge Identifier is composed of a configurable Priority component (2 bytes) and the bridge's MAC address (6 bytes). The ability to change the Priority component provides flexibility in determining which switch will be the root for the tree, regardless of its MAC address.

This command sets the switch (bridge) priority for the designated region in which the switch resides. The switch compares this priority with the priorities of other switches in the same region to determine the root switch for the region. The lowest priority value determines the root. (If there is only one switch in the region, then that switch is the root switch for the region.) The root bridge in a region provides the path to connected regions for the traffic in VLANs assigned to the region's IST instance. (Traffic in VLANs assigned to a numbered STP instance in a given region moves to other regions through the root switch for that instance.)

The priority range for an MSTP switch is 0-61440. However, this command specifies the priority as a multiplier (0 - 15) of 4096. That is, when you specify a priority multiplier value of 0 - 15, the actual priority assigned to the switch is:

$$(\text{priority-multiplier}) \times 4096$$

*For example, if you configure "2" as the priority-multiplier on a given MSTP switch, then the **Switch Priority** setting is 8,192.*

Note: *If multiple switches in the same MST region have the same priority setting, then the switch with the lowest MAC address becomes the root switch for that region.*

Syntax: [no] member-vlan <vid>

*This command is used within the spanning-tree instance configuration context and moves the VLANs you specify from the IST to the MSTI. You can create up to 16 MSTIs in a region. The **no** form of the command deletes the specified VLAN or if no VLANs are specified, the **no** form of the command deletes the specified MSTI. (Removing a VLAN from an MSTI returns the VLAN to the IST instance, where it can either remain or be re-assigned to another MSTI configured in the region.)*

*The **no** form of the command deletes the specified VLAN, or if no VLANs are specified, the **no** form of the command deletes the specified MSTI.*

Note: *At least one VLAN must be mapped to a MSTI when you create it. (A VLAN cannot be mapped to more than one instance at a time.) When a VLAN is unmapped from an MSTI, it is associated with the Internal Spanning Tree (IST) instance. VLAN 1 is always associated with the IST instance and cannot be mapped to a new MSTI.*

Syntax: priority <priority-multiplier >

This command is used within the spanning-tree instance configuration context and sets the switch (bridge) priority for the designated instance. This priority is compared with the priorities of other switches in the same instance to determine the root switch for the instance. The lowest priority value determines the root. (If there is only one switch in the instance, then that switch is the root switch for the instance.) The root bridge in a given instance provides the path to connected instances in other regions that share one or more of the same VLAN(s). (Traffic in VLANs assigned to a numbered STP instance in a given region moves to other regions through the root switch for that instance.)

The priority range for an MSTP switch is 0-61440. However, this command specifies the priority as a multiplier (0 - 15) of 4096. That is, when you specify a priority multiplier value of 0 - 15, the actual priority assigned to the switch for the specified MST instance is:

$$(priority-multiplier) \times 4096$$

*For example, if you configure “5” as the priority-multiplier for MST Instance 1 on a given MSTP switch, then the **Switch Priority** setting is 20,480 for that instance in that switch.*

Note: *If multiple switches in the same MST instance have the same priority setting, then the switch with the lowest MAC address becomes the root switch for that instance.*

Configuring MST Instance Per-Port Parameters

The commands in this section must be entered on a port-by-port basis within the interface configuration context. You may also need to specify the MST instance to which the command applies. For example, to set the port's path-cost on port 2 of slot 5, you would first enter the following.

```
ProCurve(config)# int gig5/2
```

Enters interface-based configuration context for port 2 in slot 5.

```
ProCurve(config-interface-gig5/2)#spanning-tree instance 4  
path-cost 40000
```

Sets the port path-cost for port 5/2 to 40000 for MST instance 4.

Command	Page
spanning-tree instance < 1..16 > path-cost < auto 1..200000000 >	9-25
spanning-tree instance < 1..16 > priority < priority-multiplier >	9-26
spanning-tree priority < priority-multiplier >	9-27

Syntax: spanning-tree instance < 1..16 > path-cost < auto | 1..200000000 >

*This command assigns an individual port cost for the specified MST instance. (For a given port, the path-cost setting can be different for different MST instances to which the port may belong.) The switch uses the path-cost to determine which ports are the forwarding ports in the instance; that is which links to use for the active topology of the instance and which ports to block. The settings are either **auto** or in a range from 1 to 200,000,000. With the **auto** setting, the switch calculates the path-cost from the link speed:*

- 100 Mbps: **200000**
 - 1 Gbps: **20000**
 - 10 Gbps: **2000**
- (Default: **Auto**)*

Syntax: spanning-tree instance < 1..16 > priority <priority-multiplier>

This command sets the priority for the specified port in the specified MST instance. (For a given port, the priority setting can be different for different MST instances to which the port may belong.) The priority range for a port in a given MST instance is 0-255. However, this command specifies the priority as a multiplier (0 - 15) of 16. That is, when you specify a priority multiplier of 0 - 15, the actual priority assigned to the switch is:

$$(priority-multiplier) \times 16$$

*For example, if you configure “2” as the priority multiplier on a given port in an MST instance, then the actual **Priority** setting is 32. Thus, after you specify the port priority multiplier in an instance, the switch displays the actual port priority (and not the multiplier) in the **show spanning-tree instance < 1..16 >** display.*

*You can view the actual multiplier setting for ports in the specified instance by executing **show running** and looking for an entry in this format:*

```
spanning-tree instance < 1..15 > priority < priority-multiplier >
```

*For example, configuring port gig5/2 with a priority multiplier of “3” in instance 1, results in this line in the **show running** output:*

```
interface GigabitEthernet5/2
  spanning-tree instance 1 priority 3
```

Syntax: spanning-tree priority < priority-multiplier >

This command sets the priority for the specified port(s) for the IST (that is, Instance 0) of the region in which the switch resides. The “priority” component of the port’s “Port Identifier” is set. The Port Identifier is a unique identifier that helps distinguish this switch’s ports from all others. It consists of the Priority value with the port number extension—PRIORITY:PORT_NUMBER. A port with a lower value of Port Identifier is more likely to be included in the active topology.

This priority is compared with the priorities of other ports in the IST to determine which port is the root port for the IST instance. The lower the priority value, the higher the priority. The IST root port (or trunk) in a region provides the path to connected regions for the traffic in VLANs assigned to the region’s IST instance.

The priority range for a port in a given MST instance is 0-240. However, this command specifies the priority as a multiplier (0 - 15) of 16. That is, when you specify a priority multiplier of 0 - 15, the actual priority assigned to the switch is:

$$(\text{priority-multiplier}) \times 16$$

*For example, configuring “5” as the priority multiplier on a given port in the IST instance for a region creates an actual **Priority** setting of **80**. Thus, after you specify the port priority multiplier for the IST instance, the switch displays the actual port priority (and not the multiplier) in the **show spanning-tree instance ist** display. You can view the actual multiplier setting for ports in the IST instance by executing **show running** and looking for an entry in this format:*

```
spanning-tree priority < priority-multiplier >
```

*For example, configuring port gig5/2 with a priority multiplier of “2” in the IST instance, results in this line in the **show running** output:*

```
interface GigabitEthernet5/2
  spanning-tree priority 2
```

Enabling or Disabling Spanning Tree Operation

This command is set on a per-port basis to enable or disable spanning tree operation.

Syntax: [no] spanning-tree enable

This command enables/disables spanning tree for the designated physical ports on the switch. Disabling MSTP removes protection against redundant loops that can significantly slow or halt a network. This command simply turns spanning tree on or off. It does not change the existing spanning tree configuration.

MSTP Show Commands and Troubleshooting

The following commands are used to display MSTP statistics and configuration information.

Command	Page
MSTP Statistics:	
show spanning-tree	below
show spanning-tree <interface-id>	below
show spanning-tree instance < ist 1..16 > bridge	30
show spanning-tree instance < ist 1..16 > <interface-id>	30
MSTP Configuration	
show spanning-tree mst-config	31

Displaying MSTP Statistics

The **show spanning-tree** command displays the MSTP statistics for the connections between MST regions in a network.

Syntax: show spanning-tree

*This command displays the switch's global and regional spanning-tree status, plus the per-port spanning-tree operation at the regional level. Note that values for the following parameters appear only for ports connected to active devices: **Designated Bridge, Hello Time, PtP, and Edge.***

Syntax: show spanning-tree < interface-id >

*This command displays the spanning-tree status for the designated interface. For example, to display data for the 1-gig port 5/2, you would use this command: **show spanning-tree gig 5/2***

```

ProCurve(config)#show spanning-tree
-----
Force Version      : 802.1s (MSTP)
Bridge ID         : 32768:000d00000001
Ports In Bridge   : 4
Max Age           : 20 secs
Hello Time        : 2 secs
Forward Delay     : 15 secs
Topology Changes  : 1
Last Topology Chg: 0 days 3 hours 18 min 6 secs ago
-----
Max Hops          : 20
CST Root          : 32768:000883cf2700
CST Root Port     : Lag80
CST Root Path Cost : 20000
IST Regional Root : 32768:000d00000001
IST Regional Root Path Cost : 0
IST Remaining Hops : 20
-----
Port      Priority  Cost      State      ...  Designated Bridge  ...
Gig5/10   128       Auto      Disabled   ...  32768:000d00000001 ...
Lag2      128       Auto      Disabled   ...  32768:000d00000001 ...
Lag3      128       20000    Blocking   ...  2768:000883cf2700  ...
Lag80     128       20000    Forwarding... 32768:000883cf2700 ...
-----

```

Switch's spanning-tree configuration, global settings

Identifies the overall spanning-tree root for the network.

Lists the switch's MSTP root data for connectivity with other regions and STP or RSTP devices.

Identifies the spanning-tree root for the IST Instance for the region.

Internal Spanning Tree Data (IST Instance) for the region in which the Switch Operates

Lists the parameters configured on individual ports and LAG interfaces.

Figure 9-5. Example of Common Spanning Tree Status on an MSTP Switch

Displaying Statistics for a Specific MST Instance

Syntax: show spanning-tree instance < ist | 1..16 >

This command displays the MSTP statistics for either the IST instance or a numbered MST instance running on the switch.

```

ProCurve(config)#show spanning-tree instance 1

Force Version      : 802.1s (MSTP)
Bridge ID          : 32768:000d00000001
Ports In Bridge    : 4
Max Age            : 20 secs
Hello Time         : 2 secs
Forward Delay      : 15 secs
Topology Changes   : 1
Last Topology Chg: 0 days 20 hours 45 min 7

Mapped VLANs       : 38-39
Regional Root      : 32768:000d00000001
Regional Root Port : This switch is root
Regional Root Path Cost: 0
Remaining Hops     : 20
    
```

Identity of VLANs configured in the switch for the IST instance.

Edge, No (edge-port operation disabled) indicates the port is configured for connecting to a LAN segment that includes either a bridge or switch. Edge, Yes would indicate the port is configured for a host (end node) link.

Port	Mcheck	Priority	Cost	State	Role	Edge	LinkType
Gig5/10	Yes	128	Auto	Disabled	Disabled	No	p2p
Lag2	Yes	128	Auto	Disabled	Disabled	No	p2p
Lag3	Yes	128	20000	Blocking	Alternate	No	p2p
Lag80	Yes	128	20000	Forwarding	Boundary	No	p2p

Mcheck Yes, indicates the port is configured to send RSTP BPDUs for 3 seconds. This allows for another switch connected to the port and running RSTP to establish its connection quickly and for identifying switches running 802.1D STP.

Figure 9-6. Example of MSTP Statistics for a Specific Instance on an MSTP Switch

Displaying the MSTP Configuration

This command output is useful for quickly verifying the allocation of VLANs in the switch's MSTP configuration and for viewing the configured region identifiers.

Syntax: show spanning-tree mst-config

This command displays the switch's regional configuration.

Note: The switch computes the **MSTP Configuration Digest** from the VID to MSTI configuration mappings on the switch itself. As required by the 802.1s standard, all MSTP switches within the same region must have the same VID to MSTI assignments, and any given VID can be assigned to either the IST or one of the MSTIs within the region. Thus, the MSTP Configuration Digest must be identical for all MSTP switches intended to belong to the same region. When comparing two MSTP switches, if their Digest identifiers do not match, then they cannot be members of the same region.

```
ProCurve(config)#show spanning-tree mst-config

MST Configuration Name      : mstp
MST Configuration Revision : 0
MST Configuration Digest   :
0x2E8AC7F86DF7A1175BA6DAD829D8B209

Instance ID  Mapped VLANs
-----
1            38-39
2            44, 55, 66
```

Figure 9-7. Example of a Region-Level Configuration Display

Displaying MAC Table Information

The **show bridge mac table** command displays the master MAC table information for the switch.

Changing the MAC age time. To set the MAC table aging timer, enter the following command:

```
ProCurve(config)#bridge mac-table aging-time <age>
```

where *age* is the timer value in seconds

Operating Notes

SNMP MIB Support for MSTP. MSTP is a superset of the STP/802.1D and RSTP/802.1w versions of STP, and will use the MIB objects defined for these earlier versions of STP as well as its own defined MIB objects.

Troubleshooting

Duplicate packets on a VLAN, or packets not arriving on a LAN at all. The allocation of VLANs to MSTIs may not be identical among all switches in a region.

A Switch Intended To Operate Within a Region Does Not Receive Traffic from Other Switches in the Region. An MSTP switch intended for a particular region may not have the same configuration name or region revision number as the other switches intended for the same region. The MSTP Configuration Name and MSTP Configuration Revision number must be identical on all MSTP switches intended for the same region. Another possibility is that the set of VLANs configured on the switch may not match the set of VLANs configured on other switches in the intended region.

Multimedia Traffic Control with IP Multicast (IGMP)

Contents

Overview	10-2
IGMP General Operation and Features	10-2
IGMP Terms	10-2
CLI: Configuring and Displaying IGMP	10-3
Enabling or Disabling IGMP	10-3
Configuring IGMP on a Per-Port Basis	10-3
IGMP Show Commands	10-6
Viewing the Current IGMP Configuration	10-6
Viewing IGMP Status	10-7
How IGMP Operates	10-8
IGMP Messages	10-9
Operating Rules	10-9
Operating Features	10-10
Operation With or Without IP Addressing	10-10
Automatic Fast-Leave IGMP	10-11
Configuring Fast-Leave IGMP	10-13
Forced Fast-Leave IGMP	10-13
Configuring Forced Fast-Leave IGMP	10-13
Using the Switch as Querier	10-14
Disabling or Re-enabling the Querier Function	10-15
Disabling or Re-enabling Data-Driven IGMP	10-16
Excluding Well-Known or Reserved Multicast Addresses from IP Multicast Filtering	10-16

Overview

This chapter describes multimedia traffic control with IP multicast (IGMP) to reduce unnecessary bandwidth usage on a per-port basis, and how to configure it with the switch's built-in interfaces.

IGMP General Operation and Features

In a network where IP multicast traffic is transmitted for various multimedia applications, you can use the switch to reduce unnecessary bandwidth usage on a per-port basis by configuring IGMP (Internet Group Management Protocol controls). In the default state (IGMP disabled), the switch simply floods all IP multicast traffic it receives on a given VLAN through all ports on that VLAN (except the port on which it received the traffic). This can result in significant and unnecessary bandwidth usage in networks where IP multicast traffic is a factor. Enabling IGMP allows the ports to detect IGMP queries and report packets and manage IP multicast traffic through the switch.

For a detailed explanation of IGMP operation and features on the ProCurve 8100fl switch, refer to the section on “How IGMP Operates” on page 10-8.

Note

IGMP configuration on the 8100fl switch operates at the VLAN context level. If you are not using VLANs, then configure IGMP in VLAN 1 (the default VLAN) context.

IGMP Terms

- **IGMP Device:** A switch or router running IGMP traffic control features.
- **IGMP Host:** An end-node device running an IGMP (multipoint, or multicast communication) application.
- **Querier:** A required IGMP device that facilitates the IGMP protocol and traffic flow on a given LAN. This device tracks which ports are connected to devices (IGMP clients) that belong to specific multicast groups, and triggers updates of this information. A querier uses data received from the queries to determine whether to forward or block multicast traffic on specific ports.

CLI: Configuring and Displaying IGMP

The following commands can be used to configure and display IGMP settings on the 8100fl switch.

Enabling or Disabling IGMP

In the factory default configuration, IGMP is disabled. To enable IGMP:

- If multiple VLANs are not configured, you configure IGMP on the default VLAN (DEFAULT_VLAN; VID = 1).
- If multiple VLANs are configured, you configure IGMP on a per-VLAN basis for every VLAN where this feature is to be used.

You can enable or disable IGMP on a VLAN, or multiple VLANs, using the following command.

Syntax: [no] ip igmp snooping enable

Enables IGMP on a VLAN. Note that this command must be executed in a VLAN context.

For example, here are methods to enable and disable IGMP on VLAN 2 (VID = 2).

```
ProCurve(config)# vlan 2
```

Enters configuration context for VLAN 2.

```
ProCurve(config-vlan-2)# ip igmp snooping enable
```

Enables IGMP on vlan 2.

```
ProCurve(config-vlan-2)# no ip igmp snooping enable
```

Disables IGMP on vlan 2.

Configuring IGMP on a Per-Port Basis

With the CLI, you can configure individual ports to any of the following states:

- **Auto** (the default): Causes the switch to interpret IGMP packets and to filter IP multicast traffic based on the IGMP packet information for ports belonging to a multicast group. This means that IGMP traffic will be forwarded on a specific port only if an IGMP host or multicast router is connected to the port.

Multimedia Traffic Control with IP Multicast (IGMP)

CLI: Configuring and Displaying IGMP

- **Blocked:** Drop all IGMP Control traffic (reports, joins, leaves) received from devices on the specified ports, and prevent any outgoing multicast traffic from moving through these ports. Multicast traffic (non-control) will be received and forwarded to the VLAN ports according to the currently established IGMP forwarding rules.
- **Forward:** Causes the switch to forward all IGMP and IP multicast transmissions through the port.

Notes

Whenever IGMP is enabled, the switch generates an Event Log message indicating whether querier functionality is enabled. For more information on querier functionality and Fast-Leave operation, refer to “How IGMP Operates” on page 10-8.

IP multicast traffic groups are identified by IP addresses in the range of 224.0.0.0 to 239.255.255.255. Also, incoming IGMP packets intended for reserved, or “well-known” multicast addresses automatically flood through all ports (except the port on which the packets entered the switch). For more on this topic, see “Excluding Well-Known or Reserved Multicast Addresses from IP Multicast Filtering” on page 10-16.

Configuring Per-Port IGMP Traffic Filters. The following interface-based command is used to specify how each port should handle IGMP traffic.

Syntax: [no] ip igmp snooping <auto | blocked | forward> vlan <vlan-id>]

*Used in the VLAN context, this command specifies how each port should handle IGMP traffic. (Default: **auto**.)*

Note: *Where a static multicast filter is configured on a port, and an IGMP filter created by this command applies to the same port, the IGMP filter overrides the static multicast filter for any inbound multicast traffic carrying the same multicast address as is configured in the static filter.*

For example, suppose you wanted to configure IGMP as follows for VLAN 2 on the 100/1000T ports on a module in slot 5:

Ports 5/1-5/2	auto	Filter multicast traffic. Forward IGMP traffic to hosts on these ports that belong to the multicast group for which the traffic is intended. (Also forward any multicast traffic through any of these ports that is connected to a multicast router.) Note that ‘auto’ is the default setting on all ports.
Ports 5/3-5/4	forward	Forward all multicast traffic through this port.
Ports 5/5-5/6	blocked	Drop all IGMP Control traffic (reports, joins, leaves) received from devices on these ports, and prevent any outgoing multicast traffic from moving through these ports. .

You could use the following commands to configure IGMP on VLAN 2 with the preceding settings:

```
ProCurve(config)# int gig 5/3
```

Enters interface context for port 3 in slot 5.

```
ProCurve(config-interface-gig5/3)#ip igmp snooping forward  
vlan 2
```

Forwards all multicast traffic for this port on vlan 2. Repeat the same interface-based command for port 4 in slot 5.

```
ProCurve(config)# int gig 5/5
```

Enters interface context for port 5 in slot 5.

```
ProCurve(config-interface-gig5/5)#ip igmp snooping block vlan 2
```

Drops all inbound IGMP protocol packets for this port on vlan 2. Repeat the same interface-based command for port 6 in slot 5.

Note

There is no need to configure ports 5/1 and 5/2, since auto is the default setting on all ports.

To display the VLAN and per-port IGMP configuration, you can use the **show-running config** command. For example:

```
ProCurve# show running-config  
....  
vlan 2  
    ip igmp snooping enable  
  
!  
interface GigabitEthernet5/3  
    ip igmp snooping forward vlan 2  
!  
interface GigabitEthernet5/4  
    ip igmp snooping forward vlan 2  
!  
interface GigabitEthernet5/5  
    ip igmp snooping block vlan 2  
!  
interface GigabitEthernet5/6  
    ip igmp snooping block vlan 2  
...
```

IGMP Show Commands

The following commands are used to display IGMP configuration information and statistics.

Viewing the Current IGMP Configuration

The following IGMP show commands list the IGMP configuration for all VLANs configured on the switch or for a specific VLAN.

Syntax: `show ip igmp snooping config`

Displays IGMP configuration for all VLANs on the switch.

`show ip igmp snooping vlan <vlan-id> config`

Displays IGMP configuration for a specific VLAN on the switch, including per-port data.

For example, suppose you have the following VLAN and IGMP configurations on the switch:

VLAN ID	VLAN Name	IGMP Enabled	Querier
1	Default	No	Yes
10	VLAN-10	No	Yes
11	VLAN-11	Yes	Yes
12	VLAN-12	Yes	Yes
13	VLAN-13	No	Yes

You could use the **show ip igmp snooping config** command to display this data as follows:

```
ProCurve#show ip igmp snooping config
```

```
VLAN ID      VLAN NAME      IGMP Enabled      Querier
1            Default        No                 Yes
10           VLAN-10        No                 Yes
11           VLAN-11        Yes                Yes
12           VLAN-12        Yes                Yes
13           VLAN-13        No                 Yes
```

Figure 10-1. Example Listing of IGMP Configuration for All VLANs in the Switch

The **show ip igmp snooping vlan config** command includes the VLAN ID (*vid*) designation, and combines the above data with the IGMP per-port configuration:

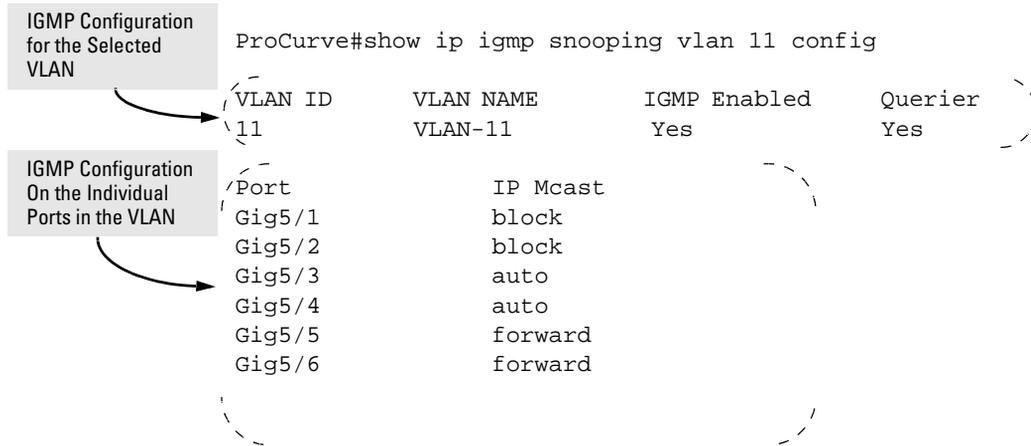


Figure 10-2. Example Listing of an IGMP Configuration for a Specific VLAN

Viewing IGMP Status

To display data showing active group addresses, reports, queries, querier access port, and active group address data (port, type, and access), use the following show commands.

Show Command	Output
show ip igmp snooping	Global command listing IGMP status for all VLANs configured in the switch: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • VLAN ID (VID) and name • Active group addresses per VLAN • Querier address • Number of report and query packets per group • Querier access port per VLAN
show ip igmp snooping <vlan-id>	Per-VLAN command listing above IGMP status for specified VLAN (VID)
show ip igmp snooping group <ip-addr>	Lists the ports currently participating in the specified group, with port type, Access type, Age Timer data and Leave Timer data.

For example, suppose that **show ip igmp snooping** listed an IGMP group address of 224.0.1.22. You could get additional data on that group by executing the following command.

```
ProCurve#show ip igmp snooping group 224.0.1.22

IGMP ports for group 224.0.1.22

Port           Access           Age Timer      Leave Timer
Gig5/2         host             0              0
Gig5/4         host-router      0              0
Gig5/3         host-router      0              0
```

How IGMP Operates

The Internet Group Management Protocol (IGMP) is an internal protocol of the Internet Protocol (IP) suite. IP manages multicast traffic by using switches, multicast routers, and hosts that support IGMP. IGMP is useful in multimedia applications such as LAN TV, desktop conferencing, and collaborative computing, where there is multipoint communication; that is, communication from one to many hosts, or communication originating from many hosts and destined for many other hosts. In such multipoint applications, IGMP will be configured on the hosts, and multicast traffic will be generated by one or more servers (inside or outside of the local network). Switches can then be configured to direct the multicast traffic to only the ports where needed. If multiple VLANs are configured, you can configure IGMP on a per-VLAN basis.

In ProCurve's implementation of IGMP, a multicast router is not necessary as long as a switch is configured to support IGMP with the **querier** feature enabled.) A set of hosts, routers, and/or switches that send or receive multicast data streams to or from the same source(s) is termed a *multicast group*, and all devices in the group use the same multicast group address.

IGMP Messages

The multicast group running version 2 of IGMP uses three fundamental types of messages to communicate:

- **Query:** A message sent from the querier (multicast router or switch) asking for a response from each host belonging to the multicast group. If a multicast router supporting IGMP is not present, then the switch must assume this function in order to elicit group membership information from the hosts on the network. (If you need to disable the querier feature, you can do so through the CLI, using the IGMP configuration MIB. See “IGMP Show Commands” on page 10-6.)
- **Report (Join):** A message sent by a host to the querier to indicate that the host wants to be or is a member of a given group indicated in the report message.
- **Leave Group:** A message sent by a host to the querier to indicate that the host has ceased to be a member of a specific multicast group.

Note on IGMP version 3 support

When an IGMPv3 Join is received by the switch, it accepts the host request and begins to forward the IGMP traffic. This means that ports which have not joined the group and are not connected to routers or the IGMP Querier will not receive the group's multicast traffic.

The switch does not support the IGMPv3 “Exclude Source” or “Include Source” options in the Join Reports. Rather, the group is simply joined from all sources.

The switch does not support becoming a version 3 Querier. It will become a version 2 Querier in the absence of any other Querier on the network.

Operating Rules

An IP multicast packet includes the multicast group (address) to which the packet belongs. IGMP identifies members of a multicast group (within a subnet) and allows IGMP-configured hosts (and routers) to join or leave multicast groups based on the following operations.

- When an IGMP client connected to a switch port needs to receive multicast traffic from a specific group, it joins the group by sending an IGMP report (join request) to the network. (The multicast group specified in the join request is determined by the requesting application running on the IGMP client.)

- When a networking device with IGMP enabled receives the join request for a specific group, it forwards any IP multicast traffic it receives for that group through the port on which the join request was received.
- When the client is ready to leave the multicast group, it sends a Leave Group message to the network and ceases to be a group member.
- When the leave request is detected, the appropriate IGMP device will cease transmitting traffic for the designated multicast group through the port on which the leave request was received (as long as there are no other current members of that group on the affected port).

Operating Features

The following IGMP operations and features are supported on the 8100fl switch:

- **Operation With or Without IP Addressing:** This feature helps to conserve IP addresses by enabling IGMP to run on VLANs that do not have an IP address. See “Operation With or Without IP Addressing” on page 10-10.
- **Querier Capability:** The switch performs this function for IGMP on VLANs having an IP address when there is no other device in the VLAN acting as querier. See “Using the Switch as Querier” on page 10-14.
- **Automatic Fast-Leave IGMP:** Fast-Leave is enabled in the default configuration. This feature drops unjoined mulitcast traffic except for always-forwarded traffic toward the Querier or multicast routers, and out of IGMP-forward ports. See “Automatic Fast-Leave IGMP” on page 10-11.
- **Forced Fast-Leave IGMP:** This feature speeds up the process of blocking unnecessary IGMP traffic to a switch port that is connected to multiple end nodes. See “Forced Fast-Leave IGMP” on page 10-13.

Operation With or Without IP Addressing

You can configure IGMP on VLANs that do not have IP addressing. The benefit of IGMP without IP addressing is a reduction in the number of IP addresses you have to use and configure. This can be significant in a network with a large number of VLANs. The limitation on IGMP without IP addressing is that the switch cannot become Querier on any VLANs for which it has no IP address—so the network administrator must ensure that another IGMP device will act as Querier. It is also advisable to have an additional IGMP device available as a backup Querier. See the following table.

Table 10-1. Comparison of IGMP Operation With and Without IP Addressing

IGMP Function Available With IP Addressing Configured on the VLAN	Available Without IP Addressing?	Operating Differences Without an IP Address
Forward multicast group traffic to any port on the VLAN that has received a join request for that multicast group.	Yes	None
Forward join requests (reports) to the Querier.	Yes	None
Configure individual ports in the VLAN to Auto (the default)/ Blocked , or Forward .	Yes	None
Age-Out IGMP group addresses when the last IGMP client on a port in the VLAN leaves the group.	Yes	Requires that another IGMP device in the VLAN has an IP address and can operate as Querier. This can be a multi-cast router or another switch configured for IGMP operation. (HP recommends that the VLAN also include a device operating as a backup Querier in case the device operating as the primary Querier fails for any reason.
Support Fast-Leave IGMP and Forced Fast-Leave IGMP (below).	Yes	
Support automatic Querier election.	No	Querier operation not available.
Operate as the Querier.	No	Querier operation not available.
Available as a backup Querier.	No	Querier operation not available.

Automatic Fast-Leave IGMP

This feature selectively forwards joined multicast traffic by filtering unjoined mulitcast traffic (except for always-fowarded traffic) toward the Querier or multicast routers, and out of IGMP-forward ports.

If a switch port has the following characteristics, then the Fast-Leave operation will automatically apply:

1. Connected to only one end node
2. The end node currently belongs to a multicast group; i.e. is an IGMP client
3. The end node subsequently leaves the multicast group

When Fast-Leave operates, the switch does not need to wait for the Querier status update interval, but instead immediately removes the IGMP client from its IGMP table and ceases transmitting IGMP traffic to the client. (If the switch detects multiple end nodes on the port, automatic Fast-Leave does not activate—regardless of whether one or more of these end nodes are IGMP clients.)

In the next figure, automatic Fast-Leave operates on the switch ports for IGMP clients “3A” and “5A”, but not on the switch port for IGMP clients “7A” and 7B, Server “7C”, and printer “7D”.

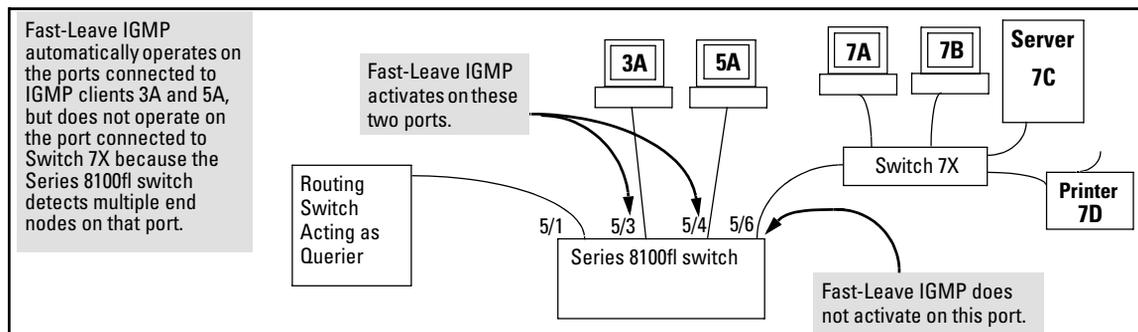


Figure 10-3. Example of Automatic Fast-Leave IGMP Criteria

When client “3A” running IGMP is ready to leave the multicast group, it transmits a Leave Group message. Because the switch knows that there is only one end node on port 5/1, it removes the client from its IGMP table and halts multicast traffic (for that group) to port 5/3. If the switch is not the Querier, it does not wait for the actual Querier to verify that there are no other group members on port 5/3. If the switch itself is the Querier, it does not query port 5/3 for the presence of other group members.

Note that Fast-Leave operation does not distinguish between end nodes on the same port that belong to different VLANs. Thus, for example, even if all of the devices on port 5/6 in Figure 10-3 belong to different VLANs, Fast-Leave does not operate on port 5/6.

Default (Enabled) IGMP Operation Solves the “Delayed Leave” Problem. Fast-Leave IGMP is enabled by default. When Fast-Leave is disabled and multiple IGMP clients are connected to the same port on an IGMP device (switch or router), if only one IGMP client joins a given multicast group, then later sends a Leave Group message and ceases to belong to that group, the switch automatically retains that IGMP client in its IGMP table and continues forwarding IGMP traffic to the IGMP client until the Querier triggers confirmation that no other group members exist on the same port. This delayed leave operation means that the switch continues to transmit unnecessary multicast traffic through the port until the Querier renews multicast group status.

Configuring Fast-Leave IGMP

The following interface-based command can be used to disable/re-enable Fast-Leave IGMP operation on a per-port basis.

Syntax: [no] ip igmp snooping fastleave

*Enables IGMP Fast-Leaves on the specified port. (Default: Enabled.) The **no** form of the command disables IGMP Fast-Leave on the specified port. Use **show running** to display the ports per-VLAN on which Fast-Leave is disabled.*

For example, to configure Fast-Leave IGMP on port 5/1, you would enter the following command:

```
ProCurve(config)# int gig 5/1
```

Enters interface-based configuration context for port 1 in slot 5.

```
ProCurve(config-interface-gig5/1)#ip igmp snooping fastleave
```

Enables Fast-Leave operation on port 5/1.

Forced Fast-Leave IGMP

When enabled, Forced Fast-Leave IGMP speeds up the process of blocking unnecessary IGMP traffic to a port that is connected to multiple end nodes. (This feature does not activate on ports where the switch detects only one end node). For example, in Figure 10-3, even if you configured Forced Fast-Leave on all ports in the switch, the feature would activate only on port 5/6 (which has multiple end nodes) when a Leave Group request arrived on that port.

When a port having multiple end nodes receives a Leave Group request from one end node for a given multicast group “X”, Forced Fast-Leave activates and waits a small amount of time to receive a join request from any other group “X” member on that port. If the port does not receive a join request for that group within the forced-leave interval, the switch then blocks any further group “X” traffic to the port.

Configuring Forced Fast-Leave IGMP

The following interface-based command can be used to enable or disable Forced Fast-Leave IGMP on a per-port basis.

Syntax: [no] ip igmp snooping forcedfastleave

*Enables IGMP Forced Fast-Leave on the specified port. (Default: Disabled.) The **no** form of the command disables Forced Fast-Leave on the specified port. Use **show running** to display the ports per-VLAN on which Forced Fast-Leave is enabled.*

For example, to configure Forced Fast-Leave IGMP on port 5/3, you would enter the following command:

```
ProCurve(config)# int gig 5/3
```

Enters interface-based configuration context for port 3 in slot 5.

```
ProCurve(config-interface-gig5/3)#ip igmp snooping  
forcedfastleave
```

Enables Forced Fast-Leave operation on port 5/3.

To view a non-default IGMP Forced Fast-Leave configuration on a VLAN, use the **show running-config** command. (The **show running-config** output does not include Forced Fast-Leave if it is set to the default of 0.)

Forced Fast-Leave can be used when there are multiple devices attached to a port.

Using the Switch as Querier

The function of the IGMP Querier is to poll other IGMP-enabled devices in an IGMP-enabled VLAN to elicit group membership information. The switch performs this function if there is no other device in the VLAN, such as a multicast router, to act as Querier. Although the switch automatically ceases Querier operation in an IGMP-enabled VLAN if it detects another Querier on the VLAN, you can also use the switch's CLI to disable the Querier capability for that VLAN.

Note

A Querier is required for proper IGMP operation. For this reason, if you disable the Querier function on a switch, ensure that there is an IGMP Querier (and, preferably, a backup Querier) available on the same VLAN.

If the switch becomes the Querier for a particular VLAN (for example, the DEFAULT_VLAN), then subsequently detects queries transmitted from another device on the same VLAN, the switch ceases to operate as the Querier for that VLAN. If this occurs, the switch Event Log lists a pair of messages similar to these:

```
I 01/15/01 09:01:13 igmp: DEFAULT_VLAN: Other Querier detected
I 01/15/01 09:01:13 igmp: DEFAULT_VLAN: This switch is no longer Querier
```

In the above scenario, if the other device ceases to operate as a Querier on the default VLAN, then the switch detects this change and can become the Querier as long as it is not pre-empted by some other IGMP Querier on the VLAN. In this case, the switch Event Log lists messages similar to the following to indicate that the switch has become the Querier on the VLAN:

```
I 01/15/01 09:21:55 igmp: DEFAULT_VLAN: Querier Election in process
I 01/15/01 09:22:00 igmp: DEFAULT_VLAN: This switch has been elected as
Querier
```

Disabling or Re-enabling the Querier Function

When the switch has an IP address on a given VLAN, it automatically operates as a Querier for that VLAN if it does not detect a multicast router or another switch functioning as a Querier. When enabled (the default setting), the switch's querier function eliminates the need for a multicast router. To disable or re-enable the ability for the switch to become querier if necessary, use the following command.

Syntax: [no] ip igmp snooping querier

This VLAN-based command disables or re-enables the ability for the switch to become querier if necessary. The **no** version of the command disables the querier function on the switch. The **show ip igmp snooping config** command displays the current querier command. (Default Querier Capability: Enabled.)

For example, here are methods to disable and re-enable the IGMP querier function on VLAN 2 (VID = 2).

```
ProCurve(config)# vlan 2
```

Enters configuration context for VLAN 2.

```
ProCurve(config-vlan-2)# no ip igmp snooping querier
```

Disables IGMP querier function on vlan 2.

```
ProCurve(config-vlan-2)# ip igmp snooping querier
```

Re-enables IGMP querier function on vlan 2.

Disabling or Re-enabling Data-Driven IGMP

Whenever IGMP snooping is enabled on a VLAN, data-driven IGMP is automatically enabled for the switch. When unregistered multicasts are received, the data-driven IP Multicast feature (“Smart IGMP”) enables the switch to filter them automatically. Thus, the sooner an IGMP Leave is processed, the sooner the unregistered multicast traffic stops flowing.

If required for troubleshooting purposes, data-driven IGMP can be disabled or re-enabled using the following command:

Syntax: [no] ip igmp snooping data-driven

Disables or re-enables data-driven IGMP globally on the switch. Note that this feature is automatically enabled whenever IGMP is enabled on a VLAN.

Excluding Well-Known or Reserved Multicast Addresses from IP Multicast Filtering

Each multicast host group is identified by a single IP address in the range of 224.0.0.0 through 239.255.255.255. Specific groups of consecutive addresses in this range are termed “well-known” addresses and are reserved for predefined host groups. IGMP does not filter these addresses, so any packets the switch receives for such addresses are flooded out all ports assigned to the VLAN on which they were received (except the port on which the packets entered the VLAN). The following table lists the 32 well-known address groups (8192 total addresses) that IGMP does not filter for the 8100 switch.

Table 10-2. IP Multicast Address Groups Excluded from IGMP Filtering

Groups of Consecutive Addresses in the Range of 224.0.0.X to 239.0.0.X*		Groups of Consecutive Addresses in the Range of 224.128.0.X to 239.128.0.X*	
224.0.0.x	232.0.0.x	224.128.0.x	232.128.0.x
225.0.0.x	233.0.0.x	225.128.0.x	233.128.0.x
226.0.0.x	234.0.0.x	226.128.0.x	234.128.0.x
227.0.0.x	235.0.0.x	227.128.0.x	235.128.0.x
228.0.0.x	236.0.0.x	228.128.0.x	236.128.0.x
229.0.0.x	237.0.0.x	229.128.0.x	237.128.0.x
230.0.0.x	238.0.0.x	230.128.0.x	238.128.0.x
231.0.0.x	239.0.0.x	231.128.0.x	239.128.0.x

* x is any value from 0 to 255.

Notes:

IP Multicast Filters. IP multicast addresses occur in the range from 224.0.0.0 through 239.255.255.255 (which corresponds to the Ethernet multicast address range of 01005e-000000 through 01005e-7fffff). Where a switch has a static Traffic/Security filter configured with a “Multicast” filter type and a “Multicast Address” in this range, the switch will use the static filter unless IGMP learns of a multicast group destination in this range. In this case, IGMP dynamically takes over the filtering function for the multicast destination address(es) for as long as the IGMP group is active. If the IGMP group subsequently deactivates, the switch returns filtering control to the static filter.

Reserved Addresses Excluded from IP Multicast (IGMP) Filtering. Traffic to IP multicast groups in the IP address range of 224.0.0.0 to 224.0.0.255 will always be flooded because addresses in this range are “well known” or “reserved” addresses. Thus, if IP Multicast is enabled and there is an IP multicast group within the reserved address range, traffic to that group will be flooded instead of filtered by the switch.

Number of IP Multicast Addresses Allowed. The 8100fl switch supports up to 1000 IGMP filters (addresses). If multiple VLANs are configured, then each filter is counted once per VLAN in which it is used.

— *This page is intentionally unused.* —

IP Routing Configuration

Contents

Overview.....	11-2
Configuring IP Interfaces.....	11-3
Configuring IP Interfaces to Ports	11-3
Configuring IP Interfaces for a VLAN	11-3
Extending the IP Configuration	11-4
Configuring Jumbo Frames	11-5
Layer 2 Filters	11-6
Configuring Layer 2 Address and Port-to-Address Lock Filters	11-6
Layer 2 Filter Examples	11-7
Example: Address Filters	11-7
Configuring Address Resolution Protocol (ARP)	11-8
Clearing ARP Cache Entries	11-8
Configuring ARP Refresh Interval	11-8
Unresolved MAC Addresses for ARP Entries	11-9
Configuring Proxy ARP	11-9
Monitoring ARP	11-9
Configuring Basic IP Parameters	11-10
Configuring DNS Parameters	11-10
Configuring IP Services (ICMP)	11-10
Configuring IP Helper	11-10
Enabling IP Forwarding	11-11
Monitoring IP Parameters	11-11
Setting Memory Thresholds	11-13

Overview

The 8100fl switch supports standards-based unicast routing for protocols such as TCP, UDP, and IP. Unicast routing protocol support covers both Interior Gateway Protocols and Exterior Gateway Protocols. This chapter describes how to configure IP interfaces and general non-protocol-specific routing parameters.

Interior Gateway Protocols are used for routing networks that are within an “autonomous system,” a network of relatively limited size. All IP interior gateway protocols must be specified with a list of associated networks before routing activities can begin. A routing process listens to updates from other routers on these networks and broadcasts its own routing information on those same networks.

The 8100fl switch supports the following Interior Gateway Protocols:

- Routing Information Protocol (RIP) Version 1, 2 (RFC 1058, 1723). Configuring RIP is described in [Chapter 12, “RIP Configuration”](#).
- Open Shortest Path First (OSPF) Version 2 (RFC 1583). Configuring OSPF is described in [Chapter 13, “OSPF Configuration”](#).

Note

Multicast Routing Protocols, used to determine how multicast data is transferred in a routed environment, are not supported in this version.

Configuring IP Interfaces

You can configure an IP interface to a single port or to a VLAN. This section provides an overview of configuring IP interfaces.

Interfaces on the 8100fl switch are logical interfaces. Therefore, you can associate an interface with a single port or with multiple ports:

- To associate an interface with a single port, specify the slot and port with the **interface** command.
- To associate an interface with multiple ports, first create an IP VLAN and add ports to it, then use the VLAN option with the **interface vlan** command.

The **ip** command creates and configures an IP interface. Configuration of an IP interface can include information such as the interface's name, IP address, netmask, broadcast address, and so on.

Configuring IP Interfaces to Ports

You can configure an IP interface directly to a physical port. Each port can be assigned multiple IP addresses representing multiple subnets connected to the physical port. For example, to assign an IP interface address to physical port GigabitEthernet 3/4, enter the following:

```
ProCurve(config)#interface gig 3/4
ProCurve(config-interface-gig 3/4)#ip address 10.50.0.0/
255.255.0.0
```

Configuring IP Interfaces for a VLAN

You can configure one IP interface per VLAN. In this case the port will send out untagged packets. To configure a port for a VLAN, enter:

```
ProCurve(config-interface-gig 3/4)#switchport mode access
vlan <VLAN ID>
```

If you need the port to send out tagged packets (that is, the port belongs to more than one VLAN), then enter:

```
ProCurve(config-interface-gig 3/4)#switchport mode trunk
ProCurve(config-interface-gig 3/4)#switchport trunk-vlans
<VLAN IDs>
```

Extending the IP Configuration

You can configure an ProCurve 8100fl interface to support the following configurations:

- **ip access-group** specifies the name of an access control list to control packets
- **ip address** sets the IP address of an interface
- **ip broadcast-address** sets the broadcast address of an interface
- **ip helper-address** specifies a destination IP address for UDP broadcast
- **ip ospf** configures Open Shortest Path First (OSPF) protocol commands
- **ip policy route-map** specifies the policy (route map) to be applied on the interface
- **ip prefix list** builds a prefix list that defines traffic to forward and/or reject from a specified subnet.
- **ip rip** configures ip Routing Information Protocol (RIP) interface commands

You can also enable the following IP functions on interfaces:

- **ip mask-reply** enables the sending Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) Mask Reply messages
- **ip spoofing** enables IP spoofing
- **ip unreachable** enables IP unreachable which sends ICMP messages back to senders of unknown protocols or undeliverable packets
- **ip proxy-arp** enables proxy ARP
- **ip redirects** enables IP re-directs

Configuring Jumbo Frames

Certain ProCurve 8100fl interface modules support jumbo frames (frames larger than the standard Ethernet frame size of 1518 bytes).

To transmit frames of up to 9216 bytes, you increase the maximum transmission unit (MTU) size from the default of 1522. You must set the MTU at the port level with the **interface mtu** command. You can also set the MTU at the IP interface level; if you set the MTU at the IP interface level, the MTU size must be less than the size configured for each port in the interface. Note that the interface MTU only determines the size of the packets that are forwarded in software.

For this release, there are some limitations on the number of 1G ports on a module that can simultaneously support jumbo frames. The following two configurations are supported:

- All ten 1G ports configured for frame sizes up to 4500 bytes
- Four 1G ports configured for frame size of 9216, the remaining six 1G ports configured for 1518 bytes (the standard Ethernet frame size).
- Six 1G ports configured for a frame size of 9216, no other ports configured.

In the following example, the ports GigabitEthernet 3/1 through GigabitEthernet 3/4 are configured with an MTU size of 9216 bytes. Ports GigabitEthernet 3/5 through GigabitEthernet 3/10 are configured with an MTU size of 1518 bytes.

```
ProCurve(config)#interface gig 3/1
ProCurve(config-interface-gig3/1)#mtu 9216
...
...
...
ProCurve(config)#interface gig 3/4
ProCurve(config-interface-gig3/4)#mtu 9216
...
ProCurve(config)#interface gig 3/5
ProCurve(config-interface-gig3/5)#mtu 1518
...
...
...
ProCurve(config)#interface gig 3/10
ProCurve(config-interface-gig3/10)#mtu 1518
```

Layer 2 Filters

Layer 2 filters on the 8100fl switch allow you to configure ports to filter specific MAC addresses. When defining a Layer 2 filter, you specify the ports to which you want the filter to apply. You can specify the following filters:

Address filters. These filters block traffic based on the frame's source MAC address, destination MAC address, or both source and destination MAC addresses in flow bridging mode. Address filters are always configured and applied to the input port.

Port-to-address lock filters. These filters prohibit a user connected to a locked port or set of ports from using another port.

Configuring Layer 2 Address and Port-to-Address Lock Filters

If you want to control access to a source or destination on a per-MAC address basis, you can configure an address filter. Address filters are always configured and applied to the input port. You can set address filters on a source MAC address, which filters out any frame coming from a specific source MAC address

To configure Layer 2 address filters, enter the following commands in Configuration mode:

```
ProCurve(config)#l2filter <name> lock <MACaddr> vlan <VLAN-  
num> in-port-list <port-list> interface <interface-slot-  
port>
```

Layer 2 Filter Examples

Figure 11-1 shows an example of the router connections for which Layer 2 filters will be configured.

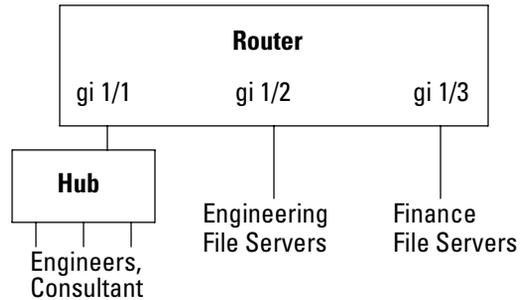


Figure 11-1. Filter example

Example: Address Filters

The following example configures a Layer 2 filter for GigabitEthernet port 2 in slot 1, for the specified MAC address which is in VLAN 2.

```
ProCurve(config)#l2filter paul12test lock 0002.b34c.10cf  
0000.0000.0000 vlan 2 in-port-list interface  
gigabitethernet 1/2  
ProCurve(config)#
```

Configuring Address Resolution Protocol (ARP)

The Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) is used to associate IP addresses with media or MAC addresses. Taking an IP address as input, ARP determines the associated MAC address. Once a media or MAC address is determined, the IP address/media address association is stored in an ARP cache for rapid retrieval. Then the IP datagram is encapsulated in a link-layer frame and sent over the network.

Clearing ARP Cache Entries

To remove the ARP entry for the host 10.8.1.2 from the ARP table:

```
ProCurve#clear arp 10.8.1.2
```

To clear the entire ARP table.

```
ProCurve#clear arp-cache
```

Note

The **clear arp** command is only used to clear an individual arp entry, while the **clear arp cache** command clears all arp entries from the entire arp table.

If the Startup configuration file contains **arp** add commands, the Management Module re-adds the ARP entries even if you have cleared them using the **clear arp** commands. To permanently remove an ARP entry, use the **no** command to remove the entry.

Configuring ARP Refresh Interval

The **arp refresh** command causes an ARP packet to be issued periodically for stations currently known in the router's ARP cache. This packet refreshes the entry to prevent timeout of the ARP entry. It also helps detect MAC station movement between different ports of a VLAN.

In the case of VLANs, implementing this command is highly recommended as it helps detect MAC movement changes due to either physical station moves or changes in network topology regardless of whether or not ARP packets are being re-issued by the moving station.

To configure the ARP refresh interval:

1. From Configuration mode, enter the VLAN interface.
2. Enter the ARP refresh interval using the **arp refresh** command.

For example, to configure VLAN 701 with an ip address of 171.1.1.255.255.255.0, an arp refresh interval of 120 seconds, and an arp timeout of 300 seconds, you would enter the following commands:

```
ProCurve(config)#interface vlan701
ProCurve(config-interface-vlan701)#ip address 172.1.1.1 255.255.255.0
ProCurve(config-interface-vlan701)#arp refresh 120
ProCurve(config-interface-vlan701)#arp timeout 300
```

By default, ARP refresh is enabled and uses a refresh interval of 60 seconds, and can be overridden by specifying a different value. To prevent ARP refreshes from taking place on an interface, the value 0 can be specified.

Unresolved MAC Addresses for ARP Entries

When the switch receives a packet for a host whose MAC address it has not resolved, it tries to resolve the next-hop MAC address by sending ARP requests. Five requests are sent initially for each host, one every second.

Configuring Proxy ARP

The 8100fl switch can be configured for proxy ARP. The proxy ARP (as defined in RFC 1027) is used to help hosts with no knowledge of routing determine the MAC address of hosts on other networks or subnets. Through proxy ARP, the switch will respond to ARP requests from a host with a ARP reply packet containing the switch's MAC address. The following example enables proxy ARP for TenGigabitEthernet interface 8/1:

```
ProCurve(config)#int ten 8/1
ProCurve(config-interface-10gig8/1)#ip proxy-arp
```

To turn off proxy ARP for the same interface, you would enter:

```
ProCurve(config-interface-10gig8/1)#no ip proxy-arp
```

Monitoring ARP

Use the **show arp** command to verify and troubleshoot your ARP configurations.

Configuring Basic IP Parameters

This section explains how to configure the following basic IP parameters.

Configuring DNS Parameters

The 8100fl switch can be configured to specify DNS servers, which supply name services for DNS requests. You can specify up to three DNS servers.

For example, to configure the default DNS server with the domain name “ProCurve_8100.com”, enter:

```
ProCurve(config)#ip domain-name ProCurve_8100.com
ProCurve(config)#ip domain-name-server 10.100.100.20
ProCurve(config)#ip domain-lookup
```

To create a list of domain names to be used when resolving a host name, enter:

```
ProCurve(config)#ip domain-list <DNS server name>
```

Configuring IP Services (ICMP)

The 8100fl switch provides ICMP message capabilities including ping and traceroute. The **ping** command allows you to determine the reachability of a certain IP host, while the **traceroute** command allows you to trace the IP gateways to an IP host.

Note

You can issue single or multiple ping tests with varying repetitions and timeout periods. Type **?** to list the full set of parameters and commands you can execute.

Configuring IP Helper

The **ip helper-address** Interface command allows you to forward specific UDP broadcast from one interface to another. Typically, broadcast packets from one interface are not forwarded (routed) to another interface. However, some applications use UDP broadcast to detect the availability of a service. Other services, for example BOOTP/DHCP require broadcast packets to be routed

so that they can provide services to clients on another subnet. An IP helper can be configured on each interface to have UDP broadcast packets forwarded to a specific host for a specific service or forwarded to all other interfaces.

You can configure the 8100fl switch to forward UDP broadcast packets received on a given interface to all other interfaces or to a specified IP address. You can specify a UDP port number for which UDP broadcast packets with that destination port number will be forwarded. By default, if no UDP port number is specified, the switch will forward UDP broadcast packets for the following six services:

- BOOTP/DHCP (port 67 and 68)
- DNS (port 37)
- NetBIOS Name Server (port 137)
- NetBIOS Datagram Server (port 138)
- TACACS Server (port 49)
- Time Service (port 37)

For example, to forward UDP broadcast packets received on interface GigabitEthernet 3/1 to the host 10.1.4.5 for the six default UDP services, enter:

```
ProCurve(config)# int gig 3/1
ProCurve(config-interface-gig3/1)# ip helper-address 10.1.4.5
```

Enabling IP Forwarding

The **ip forward-protocol** (global) command allows you to control the forwarding of physical and directed IP broadcasts.

For example, to enable forwarding of IP broadcasts on the switch, enter:

```
ProCurve(config)#ip forward-protocol udp bootps
```

Monitoring IP Parameters

The 8100fl switch provides display of IP statistics and configurations contained in the routing table. Information displayed provides routing and performance status.

The **show ip interface** commands display IP information, such as routing tables, status, and IP interface configuration, on the switch. The following example displays all established connections for the switch.

```
ProCurve#show ip interface brief
Interface      IP-Address      Status Protocol  Vlan
Gig1/3         172.18.1.6/30   Up        Up        4096
Gig1/4         172.18.1.10/30  Up        Up        4097
Gig4/5         10.10.20.1/30   Up        Down      4098
Gig4/6         10.10.22.1/30   Up        Down      4099
Lag1000        172.18.1.14/30  Up        Up        4100
Loop0          10.10.40.4/32   Up        Up        0
Mgmt0          172.17.4.44/24  Up        Up        0
```

The following example displays the contents of the routing table. It shows that some of the route entries are for locally connected interfaces (“directly connected”), while some of the other routes are learned from OSPF.

```
ProCurve#show ip route
Codes: R - RIP derived, O - OSPF derived, C - connected,
       S - static,
       * - candidate default route, IA - OSPF inter area route,
       E1 - OSPF external type 1 route, E2 - OSPF external type 2 route,
       N1 - OSPF NSSA external type 1 route,
       N2 - OSPF NSSA external type 2 route
       K - Kernel route remnant after rosrd restart
       A - Aggregate route

Gateway of last resort is 172.17.4.1 to network 0.0.0.0

S    0.0.0.0 [5/0] via 172.17.4.1, 1d20m49s, Mgmt0
     4.0.0.0/32 is subnetted, 1 subnets
C    4.4.4.4 is directly connected, Loop0
     172.17.0.0/24 is subnetted, 1 subnets
C    172.17.4.0 is directly connected, Mgmt0
     172.18.0.0/30 is subnetted, 4 subnets
O    172.18.1.0 [10/3] via 172.18.1.5, 1d19m39s, Gig1/3
     [10/3] via 172.18.1.9, 1d19m39s, Gig1/4
C    172.18.1.4 is directly connected, Gig1/3
C    172.18.1.8 is directly connected, Gig1/4
C    172.18.1.12 is directly connected, Lag1000

Number of Routes: 7
```

To display additional IP information, enter the following commands in Privileged Exec mode:

Table 11-1. Configuring an Interface for RIP

Command	Action
show ip arp	Show ARP table entries.
show ip traffic	Show traffic statistics.
show ip ospf	Show OSPF information.
show ip protocols administrative-distance	Show IP routing protocol parameters and statistics
show ip rxstats <slot>	Show Layer 3 receive statistics

Setting Memory Thresholds

The routing information base (RIB) is stored in the switch's memory. You can use the **ip table-partition** command to configure the percentage of the available memory that is used for storing IP route entries. (For the command to take effect, the interface modules in the system need to be rebooted.)

When the threshold level you configure is reached, no new routes are added.

For example, use the **ip table-partition** command to allocate 80% of the RIB for IP routes.

```
ProCurve(config)#ip table-partition percent 80
```

Note

ProCurve recommends table partition settings between 10% and 90%.

— *This page is intentionally unused.* —

RIP Configuration

Contents

Overview.....	12-2
Configuring RIP on the Switch	12-2
Enabling and Disabling RIP	12-3
Specifying the Version	12-3
Enabling Routing on a Network	12-3
Summarizing Routes	12-3
Distributing Default Information	12-3
Setting Default Metrics	12-4
Defining Administrative Distance	12-4
Filtering Updates	12-4
Limiting Updates	12-4
Limiting Paths	12-5
Filtering Networks in Updates	12-5
Redistributing Traffic from a Different Protocol	12-5
Adjusting Timers	12-5
Configuring an Interface for RIP.....	12-6
Specifying RIP Authentication	12-6
Specifying RIP Version	12-6
Enabling IP Broadcasts	12-6
Configuration Example	12-7
Related Topics	12-8

Overview

This chapter describes how to configure the Routing Information Protocol (RIP) on the 8100fl switch. RIP is a distance-vector routing protocol for use in small networks. A router running RIP broadcasts updates at set intervals. Each update contains paired values where each pair consists of an IP network address and an integer distance to that network. RIP uses a hop count metric to measure the distance to a destination.

The 8100fl switch provides support for both RIP Version 1 and 2.

- RIP1 is described in RFC 1058
- RIP2 is described in RFC 1723
- RIP version 2 support enables the switch to implement plain text and MD5 authentication methods

The protocol-independent features that apply to RIP are described in [Chapter 11, “IP Routing Configuration”](#).

Configuring RIP on the Switch

By default, RIP is disabled on the switch and on each of the attached interfaces. All of the following procedures require you to be in Router Configuration mode. To enter this mode from Configuration mode, enter:

```
ProCurve(config)#router rip
ProCurve(config-router)#
```

To configure RIP on the switch, follow these steps:

1. Start the RIP process by entering the Configuration mode **router rip** command.
2. Use the Routing Configuration mode **network** command to enable routing on the specified interfaces that are within the IP networks.
3. Use the Interface Configuration mode **ip rip** command to configure interface-specific settings.

Enabling and Disabling RIP

To enable or disable RIP on the switch, enter one of the following commands in Configuration mode:

- To enable RIP, enter **router rip**.
- To disable RIP, enter **no router rip**.

Specifying the Version

The ProCurve 8100fl supports RIP version 1 and version 2. To specify which version of RIP is supported on this 8100fl switch, enter:

```
ProCurve(config-router)#version {1|2}
```

Enabling Routing on a Network

To allow routing on a network, you must enter:

```
ProCurve(config-router)#network <IP address>
```

Summarizing Routes

RIP version 2 supports the automatic summarization of routes. Route summarization enables the switch to collect boundary subprefixes when traversing (classful) network boundaries. If your network includes disconnected subnets, you can disable route summarization to force the switch to include subnet and host routing information when sending traffic across network boundaries.

To enable route summarization (which is on by default), enter:

```
ProCurve(config-router)#auto-summary
```

To disable route summarization, enter:

```
ProCurve(config-router)#no auto-summary
```

Distributing Default Information

To enable the distribution of default information, enter:

```
ProCurve(config-router)#default-information originate
```

Setting Default Metrics

To set the default metric of distributed routes, enter:

```
ProCurve(config-router)#default-metric <number>
```

Defining Administrative Distance

The administrative distance is a metric used to determine the best path to use when more than one route to the same destination exists but in different routing protocols. For the 8100fl switch, administrative distance is a number between 0 and 255. The lower the value, the more preferable the route.

To specify the size of the administrative distance, enter:

```
ProCurve(config-router)#distance <number>
```

To revert to the default distance (this is, 100), enter:

```
ProCurve(config-router)#no distance
```

Filtering Updates

You can manage the amount of update information the ProCurve 8100fl receives by filtering routing updates by source gateway, by prefix, and by access list.

For filtering on access lists, you must further specify the direction (in or out) and the interface. For filtering on a prefix, you must specify the gateway, the direction, and the interface. For filtering on a gateway, you just need to specify the direction and the interface affected.

Limiting Updates

To suppress updates on a specified interface, enter:

```
ProCurve(config-router)#passive-interface <interface>
```

Limiting Paths

Your RIP routing table can track up to four paths to another router. You can set that number to as low as one path. To limit the number of connections your routing tables will maintain to any one IP address, enter:

```
ProCurve(config-router)#maximum-paths <number>
```

Filtering Networks in Updates

To filter the networks that you receive in routing updates, enter the **distribute-list** command:

```
ProCurve(config-router)#distribute-list {aclname | gateway  
gwprefix} {in [intf] | out [intf | ospf ospf-process-num  
[vrf vrfid] | rip | static | connected]}
```

The following example shows how to filter incoming updates using access list 101:

```
ProCurve(config)#router rip  
ProCurve(config-router)#  
ProCurve(config-router)#distribute-list 101 in
```

Redistributing Traffic from a Different Protocol

RIP has the ability to redistribute routes to a network using a different routing protocol such as OSPF. To redistribute RIP, or static routes, or connected routes, enter:

```
ProCurve(config-router)#redistribute rip <metric|route-map>  
ProCurve(config-router)#redistribute static <metric|route-map>  
ProCurve(config-router)#redistribute connected <metric|route-map>
```

Note

For more information, see [“Configuring Simple Routing Policies” on page 14-8](#).

Adjusting Timers

Tasks such as when to perform routing updates are controlled by timers. You can adjust these timers to fine tune RIP performance. Use the following command to update timers:

```
ProCurve(config-router)#timers basic <interval>
```

Configuring an Interface for RIP

To configure RIP in the switch, you must first add interfaces in the Interface Configuration mode to inform RIP about attached interfaces.

Table 12-1. Configuring an Interface for RIP

Command	Action
<code>ip rip authentication mode {md5 <text>}</code>	Enable RIP authentication on an interface
<code>ip rip version {1 2}</code>	Specify version for the interface
<code>ip rip v2-broadcast</code>	Enable version 2 broadcasts on an interface

Specifying RIP Authentication

You can enable a specific interface to use Message Digest (md5) authentication or plain text authentication (the default). For example, to enable RIP authentication on the gigabit interface 1/3 (port 3 of the module installed in slot 1), you would enter:

```
ProCurve(config)#interface gig 1/3
ProCurve(config-interface-gig1/3)#ip rip authentication mode
{md5 | <text>}
```

Specifying RIP Version

The 8100fl switch supports RIP version 1 and version 2. To specify which version of RIP is supported on a specific interface, enter:

```
ProCurve(config-if)#ip rip version {1|2}
```

Enabling IP Broadcasts

To send IP broadcast version 2 updates, enter:

```
ProCurve(config-if)#ip rip v2-broadcast
```

Note

RIP version 1 does not support multicast RIP packets.

Configuration Example

The following configuration example configures Gigabit Ethernet ports 3 and 4 in slot 1 to support RIP version 2 and to apply MD5 authentication control to incoming RIP traffic.

The 8100fl switch is also configured to support RIP version 2, to redistribute traffic from OSPF.

Routing is enabled for networks 192.168.12.0 and 192.168.22.0.

The running configuration for this RIP configuration would look like:

```
ProCurve#show running-config
...
Current configuration:
! Last modified on 2006-04-30T19:41 by trial@Router
version 2.5
enable secret 5 $1$dcwu$rg0NelE9NV9pI.SoMeB.L0
hostname ProCurve 8100fl
!
interface GigabitEthernet1/3
  no shutdown
  ip address 192.168.99.1 255.255.255.0
  ip rip authentication mode md5
  ip rip version 2

!
interface GigabitEthernet1/4
  no shutdown
  ip address 192.168.101.1 255.255.255.0
  ip rip authentication mode md5
  ip rip version 2
...
interface Management0
  no shutdown
  ip address 10.203.11.27 255.255.0.0
!
router rip
  network 192.168.12.0
  network 192.168.22.0
  version 2
  redistribute ospf
```

Related Topics

For more about the protocol-independent features that apply to RIP, such as configuring authentication and routing policies, refer to [Chapter 14, “Configuring Routing Policies”](#).

For information on how to configure IP interfaces and general non-protocol-specific routing parameters, refer to [Chapter 11, “IP Routing Configuration”](#).

OSPF Configuration

Contents

Overview.....	13-2
Supported Features	13-2
Multipath Support	13-3
OSPF Areas	13-3
OSPF Routes	13-4
Configuring OSPF Router Parameters	13-5
Enabling OSPF	13-5
Setting the Router ID	13-5
Configuring OSPF Areas	13-6
Configuring General OSPF Parameters	13-9
Configuring OSPF Interface Parameters	13-12
Alternative Area Border Router (ABR).....	13-15
OSPF Configuration Example	13-16
Monitoring OSPF.....	13-18

Overview

Open Shortest Path First (OSPF) is a modern, scalable, and fast link-state routing protocol. It is an interior routing protocol (IGP), used to distribute routing information within the boundaries of an Autonomous System (AS). Each OSPF route chooses the shortest path to any known destination based on complete knowledge of the routing topology within the AS, and using Dijkstra's SPF algorithm. Each OSPF router is responsible for informing the others about networks that are attached to it. It accomplishes that by sending Link State Advertisements, representing routers and links. Each OSPF router is also responsible for maintaining all LSAs received from other routers in its local Link State Database (LSDB).

Supported Features

The 8100fl switch implementation is compliant with the OSPFv2 specification, documented in RFC 2328. The NSSA Option, defined in RFC 1587, is also supported.

The 8100fl switch supports the following OSPF features:

- Definition of areas, including stub areas and Not So Stubby Areas (NSSAs) (RFC 1587).
- Link-state Advertisements or LSAs
- Authentication: Simple password and MD5 authentication methods are supported within an area and on an interface.
- Up to 55 OSPF adjacencies
- Configuration of virtual links
- Inter-area route summarization
- Summary filter
- External route summarization
- Static multi-path
- Configuration of parameters at the area, interface or global level. Parameters include retransmission interval, interface transmit delay, router priority, router dead and hello intervals, and authentication key.
- Route Redistribution: routes learned by OSPF from RIP can be redistributed into OSPF. OSPF routes can be redistributed into RIP. For more information on route redistribution, refer to [Chapter 14, “Configuring Routing Policies”](#).

Multipath Support

The 8100fl switch supports OSPF and static Multi-path. If multiple equal-cost OSPF or static routes have been defined for any destination, then the switch “discovers” and uses all of them. The switch will automatically learn up to sixteen equal-cost OSPF or static routes and retain them in its forwarding information base (FIB). The forwarding module then installs flows for these destinations in a round-robin fashion.

OSPF Areas

OSPF areas are a collection of subnets that are grouped in a logical fashion. Each area maintains its own link state database. The area topology is known only within the area. A router maintains a separate link state database for each area to which it is connected.

The goal of forming areas is to limit the number of routers that need to directly exchange routing information with each other, and to permit summarization of routing information on area boundaries. It is the link state nature of the protocol, combined with its ability to support hierarchy via areas, that results in significantly higher scalability than Distance Vector routing protocols, such as RIP.

There are several types of OSPF Areas supported by the ProCurve 8100fl, which differ in the way they handle External routes.

- *Backbone* (area 0): The backbone is responsible for distributing routing information between non-backbone areas. OSPF areas communicate with other areas via the backbone area. The OSPF area backbone contains all Area Border Routers (ABRs).
- *Normal*: Normal areas can have Stubs in them, which redistribute externals into the area. Such Externals will be passed through the ABR which connects this area to the Backbone. Externals originated in other areas will also be injected into the Normal area via the ABR.
- *Stub*: An ASBR (Autonomous System Border Router) cannot be placed in a Stub area, and therefore no Externals can be injected in it. An ABR that connects a Stub area to the Backbone will propagate into the Stub area only a default route, accompanied by an Inter-area route.
- *NSSA* (Not So Stubby Area): Defined in RFC 1587, NSSAs can have ASBRs in them, therefore Externals can be injected into NSSAs. Those externals are propagated by the ASB towards the backbone. Externals injected into other areas are NOT propagated into the NSSA. In summary, the NSSA handles Externals as a Normal area in the direction from the NSSA to the Backbone, and as a Stub Area in the direction of the Backbone to the NSSA.

Area Routers. In connection to areas, the following terms are used in OSPF:

- *ABR* (Area Border Router) — A router that connects the Backbone (area 0) with some other area(s).
- *ASBR* (Autonomous System Border Router) — A router that redistributes routes in OSPF (from connected, statics, or another routing protocol). An ASBR can exist in the Backbone area, or in any other non-stub area.

OSPF Routes

Once areas have been configured, four types of OSPF routes can be encountered in the network. They are in order of preference:

- *Intra-area* routes—represent destinations within the same area
- *Inter-area* routes—reflect destinations from other OSPF areas
- *External Type 1* routes
- *External Type 2* routes

External routes. Both types of External routes represent destinations that are outside of the OSPF routing domain. These routes were injected into OSPF via redistribution, either from static or direct (connected) or from another routing protocol.

The difference between the two types of Externals is in the way their cost is calculated as routes are propagated within the OSPF domain.

- In both types, Externals are redistributed by an ASBR within the OSPF domain. The ASBR always redistributes routers with a given cost.
- For Type 1 Externals, the given redistribution cost is added to the OSPF link costs as the route is propagated downstream. As a result, the cost of a Type 1 route will increase as the route travels downstream in the OSPF domain.
- The redistribution cost of a Type 2 External does not change as the route is propagated down the OSPF domain.

Note

By default, the ProCurve 8100fl redistributes Type 2 Externals.

Configuring OSPF Router Parameters

To configure OSPF on the switch in the Router Configuration mode, perform the following tasks:

1. Enable OSPF
2. Set the router ID
3. Create and configure OSPF area
4. Add interfaces to the area
5. If necessary, configure virtual links
6. Optionally, configure redistribution
7. Optionally, configure parameters at the global, area, and/or interface level

Enabling OSPF

OSPF is disabled by default on the switch.

To enable OSPF, enter the following command:

```
ProCurve(config)#router ospf <process ID>
```

Note

You can only configure one process ID for OSPF.

Setting the Router ID

The router ID uniquely identifies the switch. To set the router ID to be used by OSPF, enter the following command from Routing Configuration mode.

```
ProCurve(config-router)#ip router-id <IPaddr>
```

When setting the router ID, note the following conditions:

- If you do not explicitly specify the router ID (using the **ip router-id** command), then an ID is chosen implicitly by the switch. The address on the loopback interface is the most preferred candidate for selection as the router ID for the switch.

- If there are no addresses on the loopback interface, the switch will set the default router ID to the address of the first interface that is in the up state that the switch encounters (except the interface management0, which is the Management Module's interface). The address of a non point-to-point interface is preferred over the local address of a point-to-point interface.
- If the router ID is implicitly chosen to be the address of a non-loopback interface, and if that interface were to go down, then the router ID is changed.
- If you change the router ID (by using the **clear ip ospf <process ID>** command, an OSPF router has to flush all its LSAs from the routing domain.
- If you explicitly specify a router ID, and if all the interfaces were to go down, the router ID would not change.

Configuring OSPF Areas

On the switch, you can create multiple OSPF areas, but at least one of them should be an area backbone for the router to function as an Area Border Router (ABR).

To configure a backbone area, set the **area** parameter to **0**.

```
ProCurve(config-router)#area 0
```

Note

The **area** parameter for a backbone area can also be set to **0.0.0.0**.

To configure an OSPF area, including a stub area or an NSSA, you must first create an area by entering the following command:

```
ProCurve(config-router)#area <area ID>
```

where *area ID* is the OSPF area ID in decimal or in IP address format. After you create an area, the prompt will change so that you can set various OSPF area parameters.

```
ProCurve(config-ospf-area)#
```

Configuring Summary Ranges

To reduce the amount of routing information propagated between areas, you can configure summary-ranges on Area Border Routers (ABRs). On the switch, summary-ranges are created using the **range** command

```
ProCurve(config-ospf-area)#range <ipaddr-mask>
```

The networks specified using this command describe the scope of an area. Intra-area Link State Advertisements (LSAs) that fall within the specified ranges are aggregated into a single summary LSA that is advertised into other areas as inter-area routes. To turn off advertising the aggregated range, specify **not-advertise**.

You can also specify **no-discard** to specify that the router not generate a discard route for this range.

Configuring Stub Areas

The switch provides two ways to reduce the number of summary link advertisements (LSA Type 3) sent into a stub area.

- To prevent the router from sending any Type 3 LSAs into the stub area, specify the **no-summary** keyword with the **stub** command. :

```
ProCurve(config-ospf-area)#stub no-summary
```

Note

Use this no summary option if you do not want inter-area routes to be propagated into the stub area. In this case, default routing is used to reach inter-areas as external destinations.

- Alternatively, you can configure summary filters to filter out specific summary LSAs from the stub area. Use this command for Type 3 LSAs you want to block. Type 3 LSAs that are not specified in this command will be sent into the stub area.

Configuring Stub Area Networks

If you have hosts and networks that are attached to a router that you want to be redistributed into OSPF, and you do not want to run OSPF on the interface, you can use the following stub network and stub host commands.

```
ProCurve(config-ospf-area)#stubnetwork <ipaddr-mask> cost  
<costvalue>
```

```
ProCurve(config-ospf-area)#stubhost <ipaddr> cost  
<costvalue>
```

To specify the cost to inject into a stub area:

```
ProCurve(config-ospf-area)#default-cost <num>
```

To use a prefix-list to filter specific summary LSAs from a stub area, enter the following command:

```
ProCurve(config-ospf-area)#summary-filter <prefix>
```

Configuring Not-So-Stubby Areas (NSSA)

NSSAs are similar to stub areas, in that they are used to restrict the AS-external routing for routers in the area. But unlike stub areas, NSSAs can originate and advertise Type-7 LSAs. Type-7 LSAs carry external route information which allow external routing within an NSSA.

Note

Type 7 LSAs are advertised only within a single NSSA; they are not flooded into the backbone area or any other area by border routers. NSSA border routers translate Type-7 LSAs into Type-5 LSAs and flood them to all Type-5 capable areas. However, the switch supports the configuration of NSSAs and the ability to add networks to an NSSA.

To define an area as an NSSA, enter the following command:

```
ProCurve(config-ospf-area)#nssa
```

Enabling Authentication

The ProCurve 8100fl supports message-digest authentication for OSPF areas. To enable message-digest authentication for an area, enter:

```
ProCurve(config-ospf-area)#authentication  
[message-digest]
```

Note that you specify the actual keys to be used for authentication at the interface level.

Creating Virtual Links

You can create a virtual link to:

- Connect an area via a transit area to the backbone
- Create a redundant backbone connection via another area

Each ABR must be configured with the same virtual link. Note that virtual links cannot be configured through a stub or NSSA area.

To create a virtual link, enter:

```
ProCurve(config-ospf-area)#virtual-link <ipaddr>  
ProCurve(config-ospf-area-virtuallink)#
```

The command options and parameters for configuring a virtual link include:

- **authentication** enables authentication, using either a *message-digest* key or an *authentication-key* that specifies the OSPF password.
- **dead interval** specifies the dead router detection time in seconds
- **hello interval** configures the hello packet interval (in seconds) on this virtual link
- **retransmit interval** configures the LSA retransmit interval (in seconds) on this virtual link
- **transmit delay** configures LSA transmission delay in seconds

Configuring General OSPF Parameters

The switch provides several parameters that can be set at the OSPF router level. These parameters define:

- OSPF router ID
- Network in OSPF area
- Default routes and metrics
- Auto-cost
- RFC 1583 compatibility
- Internal and external distances
- Adjacency change logging
- Redistribution of OSPF traffic to other protocols
- Timers

Configuring the OSPF Router

To specify the OSPF router ID, enter:

```
ProCurve(config-router)#router-id <ip addr>
```

For information on setting router IDs, see [“Setting the Router ID” on page 13-5](#).

Associating a Network with the OSPF Area

To identify which network IP addresses belong to an OSPF area, enter the following command:

```
ProCurve(config-router)#network <ip addr> <mask> area <area ID>
```

Distributing Default Information

You can define the metric to use for default routes, and you can specify the use of OSPF external metric Type 1 or Type 2 for that route. By default, OSPF ASBRs will not propagate a default AS-external route into the OSPF domain.

To enable the redistribution of default route into OSPF, enter:

```
ProCurve(config-router)#default-information originate <ospf metric> metric-type <1 | 2>
```

Setting the Reference Bandwidth

The switch uses the reference bandwidth to calculate the cost of an OSPF interface. The default reference bandwidth is 1000 Mbps. You can change this value by entering the following command:

```
ProCurve(config-router)#auto-cost reference-bandwidth <number in Mbps>
```

Configuring RFC 1583 Compatibility

To turn on support for RFC 1583, enter the following command:

```
ProCurve(config-router)#compatible rfc1583
```

Logging Adjacency Changes

Support for logging changes in the adjacency states of OSPF neighbors is enabled by default. To turn it off, enter the following command:

```
ProCurve(config-router)#no log-adjacency-changes
```

Redistribution

You can redistribute routes from another protocol into the OSPF domain.

To redistribute connected routes, enter the following command:

```
ProCurve(config-router)#redistribute connected [metric  
<default metric value>| metric-type <1 | 2> |route-map  
<name> | tag <value>]
```

To redistribute static routes, enter the following command:

```
ProCurve(config-router)#redistribute static [metric  
<default metric value>| metric-type <1 | 2> |route-map  
<name> | tag <value>]
```

Setting Default Metric for Redistributed Routes

Whenever you redistribute OSPF into another protocol, you must abide by the rules of that protocol. Specifically, the metric you configure must match the metric used by that protocol.

You can define the default metric to use for redistributed routes by specifying it in the **redistribute** command, or you can specify it separately. To directly specify the default metric to use for redistributed routes, enter:

```
ProCurve(config-router)#default-metric <number>
```

Configuring Shortest Path First Computation Timers

To configure timers to control the delay in Shortest Path First (SPF) calculations, enter the following command:

```
ProCurve(config-router)#timers spf <delay>
```

The *delay* setting is the time between receiving a change and initializing the spf computation.

Configuring OSPF Interface Parameters

To set OSPF interface parameters, use the **ip ospf** command for each interface in an OSPF area. The following parameters can be set at the interface level.

Parameter	Description
authentication	Enable authentication
authentication-key	Authentication password (key)
cost	Interface cost
dead-interval	Interval after which a neighbor is declared dead
hello-interval	Time between HELLO packets
message-digest-key	Message digest authentication password (key)
mtu-ignore	Ignore MTU check in DD packet
priority	Router priority
retransmit-interval	Time between retransmitting lost link state advertisements
transmit-delay	Link state transmit delay

Using OSPF Authentication

You enable OSPF authentication by specifying the authentication method at the area interface level, then specify the keys to be used for authentication at the interface level.

- To enable simple password-based authentication on an interface, enter:

```
ProCurve(config-if)#ip ospf authentication
ProCurve(config-if)#ip ospf authentication-key
<password>
```

You can also use the **ip ospf authentication** command at the area level and then specify the authentication-key for the interfaces in the area.

- To use a message digest authentication password key, enter:

```
ProCurve(config-if)#ip ospf authentication
message-digest-key <keyID>
```

You can also use the **ip ospf authentication message-digest** command at the area level and then specify the keys for the interfaces in the area.

- To override authentication specified at the area level by specifying the authentication method at the interface level, enter:

```
ProCurve(config-if)#ip ospf authentication null
```

Specifying **null** turns off authentication for this interface even if area authentication is specified.

Specifying the Interface Cost

The switch calculates the default cost of an OSPF interface using the reference bandwidth and the interface bandwidth. The default reference bandwidth is 1000 Mbps. It can be changed by using the **auto-cost reference-bandwidth** command.

A VLAN that is attached to an interface could have several ports of differing speeds. The bandwidth of an interface is represented by the highest bandwidth port that is part of the associated VLAN. The cost of an OSPF interface is inversely proportional to this bandwidth. The cost is calculated using the following formula:

$$\text{Cost} = \text{reference bandwidth} * 1,000,000 / \text{interface bandwidth (in bps)}$$

The following is a table of the port types and the OSPF default cost associated with each type:

Port Media Type	Speed	OSPF Default Cost
Ethernet 1000	1000 Mbps	1
Ethernet 10/100	100 Mbps	10
Ethernet 10/100	10 Mbps	100

To specify the cost to this interface (and override any automatically configured cost), enter:

```
ProCurve(config-if)#ip ospf cost <num>
```

Specifying Intervals

OSPF allows you to control transmitting advertisements and waiting for other routers to send updates.

- To limit the time to wait for a neighbor before declaring it dead, enter:

```
ProCurve(config-if)#ip ospf dead-interval <num>
```

- To limit the time between HELLO packets, enter:

```
ProCurve(config-if)#ip ospf hello-interval <num>
```

- To limit the time to wait before retransmitting lost-link-state advertisements, enter:

```
ProCurve(config-if)#ip ospf retransmit-interval <num>
```

- To limit the link-state transmit delay, enter:

```
ProCurve(config-if)#ip ospf transmit-delay <num>
```

Ignoring Maximum Transmission Unit Checks

To turn off checking the MTU checking on OSPF Database Description packets, enter:

```
ProCurve(config-if)#ip ospf mtu-ignore
```

Setting the Priority Level

To specify the router's priority level (from 0 to 255), enter:

```
ProCurve(config-if)#ip ospf priority <num>
```

Suppressing Routing Updates

To suppress routing updates on a specified interface, enter:

```
ProCurve(config-router)#passive-interface <intf>
```

For example, to suppress routing on the Ethernet 3/1 interface, enter:

```
ProCurve(config)#router ospf 4  
ProCurve(config-router)#  
ProCurve(config-router)#passive-interface ethernet 3/1
```

Note

To suppress routing updates on all interfaces, use the **passive-interface default** command.

Alternative Area Border Router (ABR)

The switch automatically supports the alternative ABR implementation, as defined in the IETF “Alternative OSPF ABR Implementations” Internet Working Draft. This feature improves the behavior of a router connected to multiple areas without an active backbone connection. Behavior modifications allow the alternative ABR to successfully forward routes to the backbone and other areas despite not being actively connected to the backbone.

Note

The switch implements the alternative ABR feature automatically. No configuration changes are necessary.

ProCurve's OSPF implementation considers a router to be an ABR if it satisfies the following three requirements:

- One or more non-backbone areas actively attached. As defined in the IETF working draft, “An area is considered *actively attached* if the router has at least one interface in that area in the state other than Down.”
- Area 0 configured.
- An interface in the Up state in Area 0. This requirement is satisfied even if the adjacent interface on the Area 0 peer is in the Down state. As long as the ABR's interface in Area 0 has not been administratively shut down, it will continue to function as an ABR. A loopback interface belonging to the backbone will also be considered as an active attachment to the backbone.

If an ABR that is actively attached to more than one non-backbone area ceases to satisfy the above Area 0 requirements (configured and an interface in the Up state), it no longer functions as an ABR, provided that its non-backbone areas are connected to the backbone themselves.

Note

For meaningful routing to occur, the areas to which the Alternative ABR connects, must themselves be connected to the backbone. As the IETF draft reiterates, “[This feature does] not obviate the need of virtual link configuration in case an area has no physical backbone connection at all. The methods described here improve the behavior of a router connecting two or more *backbone-attached* areas.”

OSPF Configuration Example

Figure 13-1 shows a sample OSPF configuration of a ProCurve 8100fl and several neighboring routers. The interfaces are GigabitEthernet ports and have MD5 authentication enabled. Except where noted in the configuration, all other OSPF interface and router parameters use default values:

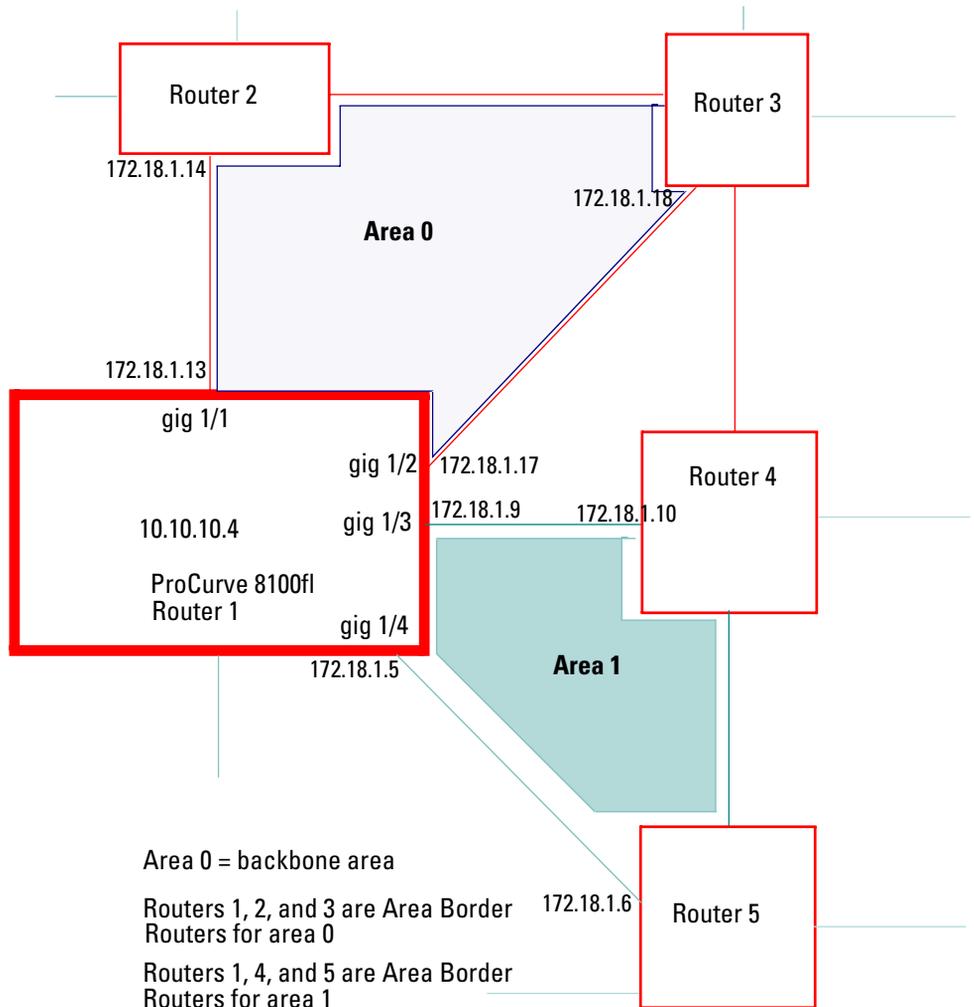


Figure 13-1. OSPF Configuration Example

The configuration for this sample OSPF configuration would look like:

```
...
interface GigabitEthernet1/1
  no shutdown
  ip address 172.18.1.13
  ip OSPF message-digest-key 109 md5 2router1
  ip OSPF authentication message-digest
!
interface GigabitEthernet1/2
  no shutdown
  ip address 172.18.1.17
  ip OSPF message-digest-key 109 md5 2router2
  ip OSPF authentication message-digest
!
interface GigabitEthernet1/3
  no shutdown
  ip address 172.18.1.9
  ip OSPF message-digest-key 109 md5 2router3
  ip OSPF authentication message-digest
!
interface GigabitEthernet1/4
  no shutdown
  ip address 172.18.1.5
  ip OSPF message-digest-key 109 md5 2router4
  ip OSPF authentication message-digest
!
...
router OSPF 100
  area 0.0.0.0 stubhost 4.4.4.4 cost 100
  network 172.18.1.12 255.255.255.252 area 0.0.0.0
  network 172.18.1.16 255.255.255.252 area 0.0.0.0
  network 172.18.1.8 255.255.255.252 area 0.0.0.1
  network 172.18.1.4 255.255.255.252 area 0.0.0.1
ip route 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0 172.17.4.1
ip router-id 10.10.10.4
...
```

Monitoring OSPF

The **show ip ospf** commands allow you to display detailed versions of the various OSPF tables. The **show ip ospf** commands can only display OSPF tables for the switch on which the commands are being entered (see the following examples and commands).

Example. Show ip ospf border routers:

```
ProCurve#show ip ospf border-routers
OSPF Router with ID(0.0.0.0) (Process ID 0)
Destination Next Hop Cost Type Rte Type Area SPF No
32.32.32.32 3.3.3.2 1 ABR/ASBR INTRA 0.0.0.0 14
33.33.33.33 4.4.4.2 1 ABR/ASBR INTRA 0.0.0.0 14
```

Example. Show ip ospf counters:

```
ProCurve#show ip ospf counters
Counters for OSPF Process:
Packets Received:
Monitor 0
Hello 492
Database Description 38
LS Request 1
LS Update 14
LS Acknowledgement 52
Packets Sent:
Monitor 0
Hello 604
Database Description 41
LS Request 3
LS Update 42
LS Acknowledgement 14
Errors:
Confusing Master/Initial flags 31
```

Example. Show ip ospf database:

```
ProCurve#show ip ospf database
OSPF Router with ID(66.1.1.1) (Process ID 11)
Router Link States (Area 0.0.0.0)
Link ID ADV Router Age Seq# Checksum Link Count
32.32.32.32 32.32.32.32 1364 0x80000003 0x2414 1
33.33.33.33 33.33.33.33 1371 0x80000003 0x1416 1
66.1.1.1 66.1.1.1 1362 0x8000000D 0x42C4 4
67.1.1.1 67.1.1.1 161 0x80000011 0xA783 3
Net Link States (Area 0.0.0.0)
Link ID ADV Router Age Seq# Checksum Router Count
2.2.2.1 67.1.1.1 161 0x80000002 0x9AE8 2
3.3.3.1 66.1.1.1 1362 0x80000001 0xC087 2
4.4.4.1 66.1.1.1 1372 0x80000001 0xCE72 2
Type-5 AS External Link States
Link ID ADV Router Age Seq# Checksum Tag
5.5.5.0 66.1.1.1 185 0x80000003 0xB8C5 0
6.6.6.0 66.1.1.1 1636 0x80000001 0x98E4 0
```

Command. Show ip ospf flood list <interface>:

```
ProCurve(config)#show ip ospf flood-list gigabitethernet 4/1
```

Command. Show ip ospf interface <interface>:

```
ProCurve(config)#show ip ospf interface gigabitethernet 4/1
```

Command. Show ip ospf neighbors:

```
ProCurve(config)#show ip ospf neighbors
```

Command. Show ip ospf request-list:

```
ProCurve(config)#show ip ospf request-list
```

Command. Show ip ospf retransmission-list:

```
ProCurve(config)#show ip ospf retransmission-list
```

Command. Show ip ospf virtual-links:

```
ProCurve(config)#show ip ospf virtual-links
```

— *This page is intentionally unused.* —

Configuring Routing Policies

Contents

Overview.....	14-2
Route Preferences.....	14-2
Import Policies	14-3
Import-Source	14-3
Route-Filter	14-4
Export Policies	14-4
Export-Destination	14-4
Export-Source	14-5
Route-Filter	14-5
Authentication	14-5
Authentication Methods	14-6
Using Route Maps	14-7
Configuring Next Hop Options	14-7
Configuring Simple Routing Policies	14-8
Redistributing Static Routes	14-8
Redistributing Directly Attached Networks	14-8
Redistributing RIP into RIP	14-8
Redistributing RIP into OSPF	14-9
Redistributing OSPF to RIP	14-9

Overview

The 8100fl switch supports flexible routing policies. These allow the network administrator to control import and export of routing information based on criteria including:

- Source and destination interface
- Previous hop router
- Tag associated with routes
- Specific destination address

The network administrator can specify a preference level for each combination of routing information being imported by using a flexible masking capability.

The switch also provides the ability to create advanced and simple routing policies. Simple routing policies provide a quick route redistribution between various routing protocols (RIP and OSPF). Advanced routing policies provide more control over route redistribution.

Route Preferences

Preference (or distance) is the value the switch routing process uses to order preference of routes from one protocol or peer over another. Preference can be set using several different configuration commands. You can set preference based on one network interface over another, or from one remote gateway over another. However, you cannot use preference to control the selection of routes within an Interior Gateway Protocol (IGP). This is accomplished automatically by the protocol based on metrics.

You can use preference to select routes from the same Exterior Gateway Protocol (EGP) learned from different peers or autonomous systems. Each route has only one preference value associated with it, even though the preference can be set at many places using configuration commands. The last or most specific preference value set for a route is the value used. A preference value is an arbitrarily assigned value used to determine the order of routes to the same destination in a single routing database. The active route is chosen by the lowest preference value.

A default preference is assigned to each source from which the switch routing process receives routes. Preference values range from 0 to 255 with the lowest number indicating the most preferred route.

Table 14-1 summarizes the default preference values for routes learned in various ways. The table lists the CLI commands that set preference, and shows the types of routes to which each CLI command applies.

Table 14-1. Default Preferences for Routes

Preference	Defined by CLI Command
OSPF routes	<pre>ProCurve(config-router)#default-information originate metric ProCurve(config-router)#distance internal ProCurve(config-router)#distance external</pre>
Static routes from config	<pre>ProCurve(config-router)#ip route</pre>
RIP routes	<pre>ProCurve(config-router)#default-metric ProCurve(config-router)#distance ProCurve(config-router)#default-information originate</pre>

Import Policies

Import policies control the importation of routes from routing protocols and their installation in the routing databases (Routing Information Base and Forwarding Information Base). Import Policies determine which routes received from other systems are used by the switch routing process. Every import policy can have up to two components:

- Import-Source
- Route-Filter

Import-Source

This component specifies the source of the imported routes. It can also specify the preference to be associated with the routes imported from this source.

The routes to be imported can be identified by their associated attributes:

- Type of the source protocol (RIP and OSPF).
- Source interface or gateway from which the route was received.

In some cases, a combination of the associated attributes can be specified to identify the routes to be imported.

The importation of RIP routes may be controlled by source interface and source gateway. RIP does not support the use of preference to choose between RIP routes. That is left to the protocol metrics.

Due to the nature of OSPF, only the importation of ASE routes may be controlled. OSPF intra-and inter-area routes are always imported into the routing table with a preference of 10. If a tag is specified with the import policy, routes with the specified tag will only be imported. It is only possible to restrict the importation of OSPF ASE routes when functioning as an AS border router. Like the other interior protocols, preference cannot be used to choose between OSPF ASE routes. That is done by the OSPF costs.

Route-Filter

This component specifies the individual routes which are to be imported or restricted. The preference to be associated with these routes can also be explicitly specified using this component.

The preference associated with the imported routes are inherited unless explicitly specified. If there is no preference specified with a route-filter, then the preference is inherited from the one specified with the import-source.

Every protocol (RIP and OSPF) has a configurable parameter that specifies the default-preference associated with routes imported to that protocol. If a preference is not explicitly specified with the route-filter, as well as the import-source, then it is inherited from the default-preference associated with the protocol for which the routes are being imported.

Export Policies

Export policies control the redistribution of routes to other systems. They determine which routes are advertised by the Unicast Routing Process to other systems. Every export policy can have up to three components:

- Export-Destination
- Export-Source
- Route-Filter

Export-Destination

This component specifies the destination where the routes are to be exported. It also specifies the attributes associated with the exported routes. The interface, gateway, or the autonomous system to which the routes are to be redistributed are a few examples of export-destinations. The metric, type, tag, and AS-Path are examples of attributes associated with the exported routes.

Export-Source

This component specifies the source of the exported routes. It can also specify the metric to be associated with the routes exported from this source.

The routes to be exported can be identified by their associated attributes:

- Their protocol type (RIP, OSPF, Static, Connected).
- Interface or the gateway from which the route was received.
- Tag associated with a route. Both OSPF and RIP version 2 currently support tags. All other protocols have a tag of zero.

In some cases, a combination of the associated attributes can be specified to identify the routes to be exported.

Route-Filter

This component specifies the individual routes which are to be exported or restricted. The metric to be associated with these routes can also be explicitly specified using this component.

The metric associated with the exported routes are inherited unless explicitly specified. If there is no metric specified with a route-filter, then the metric is inherited from the one specified with the export-source.

If a metric was not explicitly specified with both the route-filter and the export-source, then it is inherited from the one specified with the export-destination.

Every protocol (RIP and OSPF) has a configurable parameter that specifies the default-metric associated with routes exported to that protocol. If a metric is not explicitly specified with the route-filter, export-source as well as export-destination, then it is inherited from the default-metric associated with the protocol to which the routes are being exported.

Authentication

Authentication guarantees that routing information is only imported from trusted routers. Many protocols like RIP V2 and OSPF provide mechanisms for authenticating protocol exchanges. A variety of authentication schemes can be used. Authentication has two components – an Authentication Method and an Authentication Key. Many protocols allow different authentication methods and keys to be used in different parts of the network.

Authentication Methods

There are two main authentication methods: simple password and MD5.

Simple Password Authentication. In this method, an authentication key of up to 8 characters is included in the packet. If this does not match what is expected, the packet is discarded. This method provides little security, as it is possible to learn the authentication key by watching the protocol packets.

MD5 Authentication. This method uses the MD5 algorithm to create a crypto-checksum of the protocol packet and an authentication key of up to 16 characters. The transmitted packet does not contain the authentication key itself; instead, it contains a crypto-checksum, called the digest. The receiving router performs a calculation using the correct authentication key and discards the packet if the digest does not match. In addition, a sequence number is maintained to prevent replay of older packets. This method provides a much stronger assurance that routing data originated from a router with a valid authentication key.

Many protocols allow specification of two authentication keys per interface. Packets are always sent using the primary keys, but received packets are checked with both the primary and secondary keys before being discarded.

RFC 2178. The 8100fl switch supports MD5 specification of OSPF RFC 2178 which uses the MD5 algorithm and an authentication key of up to 16 characters. Thus there are three authentication schemes available per interface: none, simple, and RFC 2178 OSPF MD5 authentication. It is possible to configure different authentication schemes on different interfaces.

RFC 2178 allows multiple MD5 keys per interface. Each key has two times associated with the key: a time period that the key will be generated; and a time period that the key will be accepted.

Note

The 8100fl switch allows only one MD5 key per interface. There are no options to specify the time period during which the key would be generated and accepted; the specified MD5 key is always generated and accepted.

Using Route Maps

A route map defines conditions and actions to be taken for:

- importing routes or exporting routes
- redistributing routes from or into any routing protocol

A route map consists of one or more *conditions* and the *action* to be taken when the condition is met. Each condition tells the switch to either permit or deny a route that matches the criteria specified in the route map. To be imported, exported, or redistributed, a route needs to meet the conditions of a configured route map. Note that a route can meet the conditions of a route map where the keyword **deny** is explicitly specified; in this case, the route will *not* be imported, exported, or redistributed.

To create a route map, enter the following commands in Configuration mode:

```
ProCurve(config)#route-map <number-or-string> permit
<sequence-number> <match-criteria> <action>
ProCurve(config)#route-map <number-or-string> deny
<sequence-number> <match-criteria>
```

In the following example, when the prefix of a route matches the network address 15.4.0.0, the route is redistributed to a next hop of 12.10.4.13.

```
ProCurve(config)#route-map 1 permit 1 match-prefix network
15.4.0.0/16 set next-hop 12.10.4.13
```

Configuring Next Hop Options

To set the values that control where to put packets that pass a match clause of a route map for policy routing, enter the **set** command at the Route Map Configuration level:

```
ProCurve(config-route-map)#set {ip next-hop ipaddr2...
[verify-availability] | metric aval | metric-type {type-1 |
type-2} | tag tval}
```

The following example shows how to specify the next hop for the route-map called mainroutemap and verify that it is reachable before sending traffic.

```
ProCurve(config)#route-map mainroutemap
ProCurve(config-route-map)#set ip next-hop 10.203.1.26
verify-availability
```

Configuring Simple Routing Policies

Simple routing policies provide an efficient way for routing information to be exchanged between routing protocols. The **redistribute** command can be used to redistribute routes from one routing domain into another routing domain. Redistribution of routes between routing domains is based on route policies. A route policy is a set of conditions based on which routes are redistributed. While the **redistribute** command may fulfill the export policy requirement for most users, complex export policies may require the use of the commands listed under Export Policies.

Every protocol (RIP and OSPF) has a configurable parameter that specifies the default-metric associated with routes exported to that protocol. If a metric is not explicitly specified with the redistribute command, then it is inherited from the default-metric associated with the protocol to which the routes are being exported.

Redistributing Static Routes

Static routes can be redistributed to another routing protocol such as RIP or OSPF by the following command. To redistribute static routes, enter one of the following commands in Router Configuration mode:

```
ProCurve(config-router)#redistribute static [metric|route-map]
```

Redistributing Directly Attached Networks

Routes to directly attached networks are redistributed to another routing protocol such as RIP or OSPF by the following command. To redistribute direct routes, enter the following command in Router Configuration mode:

```
ProCurve(config-router)#redistribute connected  
[metric|route-map]
```

Redistributing RIP into RIP

The switch routing process requires RIP redistribution into RIP if a protocol is redistributed into RIP.

To redistribute RIP into RIP, enter the following command in Router Configuration mode:

```
ProCurve(config-router)#redistribute rip [metric|route-map]
```

Redistributing RIP into OSPF

RIP routes may be redistributed to OSPF.

To redistribute RIP into OSPF, enter the following command in Router Configuration mode:

```
ProCurve(config-router)#redistribute ospf [match  
<external|internal|nssa-external> |metric|route-map]
```

Redistributing OSPF to RIP

For the purposes of route redistribution and import-export policies, OSPF intra-area and inter-area routes are referred to as **ospf** routes, and external routes redistributed into OSPF are referred to as **ospf-ase** routes.

OSPF routes may be redistributed into RIP. To redistribute OSPF into RIP, enter the following command in Router Configuration mode:

```
ProCurve(config-router)#redistribute rip [metric|route-map]
```

— *This page is intentionally unused.* —

Access Control Lists (ACLs)

Contents

Overview.....	15-2
Layer 3 Access Control List (ACLs)	15-3
Creating an ACL	15-4
The “Any” Parameter and Wild Cards	15-5
How Multiple ACL Rules are Evaluated	15-6
Implicit Deny Rule	15-7
Editing ACLs	15-9
Applying ACLs	15-10
Applying ACLs to Interfaces	15-10
ACL Viewing	15-11
Layer 2 Access Control Lists (ACLs)	15-13
Layer 2 Filters	15-13
Layer 2 ACLS	15-13
Monitoring Layer 2 ACLs	15-14
Protocols and Keywords.....	15-15

Overview

This chapter explains how to configure and use Access Control Lists (ACLs) on the 8100fl switch. When used in conjunction with certain features, ACLs provide control over the forwarding of Layer 3 and layer-4 traffic as illustrated in Figure 15-1.

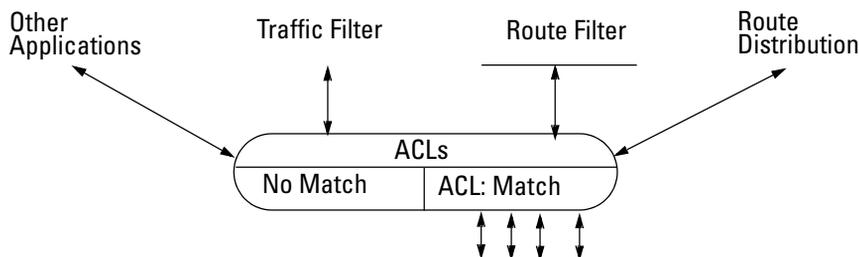


Figure 15-1. Using ACLs with Applications

Each ACL is a collection of rules. Each rule is designed to act on a specific protocol, specific address, or specific destination. An ACL can be simple, consisting of only one rule, or complicated with many rules. Each rule tells the switch to either permit or deny the packet that matches the rule's packet description.

The real power in using ACLs is the ability to create multiple ACLs and apply them to the variety of traffic experienced in your network. Their main complexity consists in knowing how to apply them in an order that produces the desired results. This chapter explains the syntax of creating ACLs, and then shows how to order them to achieve the desired results.

The 8100fl switch supports two main categories of ACLs :

- Layer 2 ACLs use the **l2acl** command to filter traffic based on source or destination MAC addresses (see “[Layer 2 Access Control Lists \(ACLs\)](#)” on page 15-13).
- Layer 3/4 ACLs use the **access-list** command to filter traffic based on source or destination IP address, source or destination TCP/UDP port, ToS or protocol type for IP traffic. They also control access to services provided on the switch, for example, Telnet server and HTTP server.

Note

Source filtering is available on switch interface modules; however, the application of source filtering must take place on the entire interface module.

Layer 3 Access Control List (ACLs)

An ACL consists of a protocol type and one or more rules which tell the switch to either *permit* or *deny* packets or routes that match the match criteria on which each rule is based. In this release, the Layer 3 ACL rules describe particular types of IP packets. ACLs can be simple, consisting of only one rule or they can be complicated, containing a number of rules for assessing packets.

ACLs can be created and configured using the **access-list** command from the Configuration mode of the CLI. The basic elements of a standard ACL are as follows:

```
ProCurve(config)#access-list <n> <deny | permit> <protocol |  
source> <destination>
```

where

<n> is the ACL ID or name

<deny | permit> represents the choices for action to be taken on a match

<protocol | source ip> is the protocol or source address

<destination> is the destination address

For example, the following ACL (*PermitTCP*) consists of a single **access-list** command that permits all IP packets from host *192.168.1.4* to go to host *10.203.101.1*.

```
ProCurve(config)#access-list PermitTCP permit tcp 192.168.1.4 0.0.0.0  
10.203.10.1 0.0.0.0
```

The following example is a more sophisticated ACL, consisting of three rules, that can be applied to inbound packets:

```
ProCurve(config)#access-list 102 permit ip 10.121.96.0/24 any  
ProCurve(config)#access-list 102 deny ip 141.77.132.0/24 any  
ProCurve(config)#access-list 102 deny tcp any any
```

In the previous example, each rule is added to the ACL using separate entries of the **access-list** command, referencing the same ACL ID of 102.

Note

ACL rules are defined as either **permit** or **deny**. All ACL rules must either permit a packet or route or deny it. No other actions are permitted.

Creating an ACL

To create an ACL, complete the following steps:

1. Specify a name (or number) for the ACL.

Note

Each ACL is identified by a name, consisting of alphanumeric characters. The ACL name can be a meaningful string such as *denyFTP* or it can be a simple number such as *100* or *101*.

2. Specify a permit or deny action.
3. Choose a source address or protocol by selecting one of the following options:

Option	Description
<0..255>	The protocol number or name as shown in Table 15-3 on page 15-15 .
A.B.C.D	Source ip address
A.B.C.D and MASK	Source ip address with mask
AHP	Authentication Header Protocol
any	Any source host
host	A single source host
ICMP	Internet Control Message Protocol
IP	Any Internet Protocol
OSPF	OSPF routing protocol
UDP	User Datagram Protocol

Note

Once you specify a protocol, the other protocols are eliminated and the list narrows. Once you specify **any** source host, for example, you cannot then specify an individual source IP address.

4. Identify the destination by selecting one of the following options:

Option (Destination)	Description
A.B.C.D	Destination address
A.B.C.D and MASK	Destination address with Mask
any	Any destination host

Option (Destination)	Description
eq	Match only packets on a given port number (equal to)
gt	Match only packets with a port number greater than
host	A single destination host
lt	Match only packets with a port number less than
range	Match only packets in the port number range

5. (Optional) Refine the ACL by specifying conditions for the traffic from the following list of options:

Condition	Description
dscp	Match packets with given DSCP value
eq	Match only packets on a given port number
fragments	Check non-initial fragments
gt	Match only packets with a port number greater than
lt	Match only packets with a port number less than
range	Match only packets in the port number range

Note

There are three types of packets: Whole unfragmented packets (W); Initial Fragments (IF); and Non-initial Fragments (NIF). If you do not specify **fragments** in the ACL rule, the ACL matches W and IF, but not NIF packets. If you do specify **fragments** in the ACL rule, the ACL matches only NIF packets.

The “Any” Parameter and Wild Cards

When defining an ACL it may be desirable to skip a match criteria field. For example, an ACL is defined where the source address is immaterial, but the destination address is required. Since each match criteria field is position-sensitive, you can use the keyword **any** to skip a field – in this case, the source address. In effect, **any** says “accept any value for this match criteria.”

For example, the following ACL denies IP traffic between any source and destination address and illustrates both the use of the **any** parameter and the use of wild carding:

```
ProCurve(config)#access-list NoTelnet deny ip any any
```

Notice in the previous example that both the source address and the destination address are skipped over using the **any** parameter. The keyword **any** is needed only to skip a field in order to explicitly specify another field whose position is further along in the ACL.

How Multiple ACL Rules are Evaluated

The sequence of the rules within an ACL consisting of multiple rules is important. When an ACL application checks a packet or route against an ACL, it applies rules in the order in which they reside within the ACL – from first to last. The 8100fl switch also applies multiple ACLs in the order in which they are configured (the order in which they appear in the running-config). If a packet or route matches a rule, it is forwarded or dropped based on the **permit** or **deny** keyword in the rule. If there is no match, the packet or route is passed on to the next rule in the ACL.

Consequently, rules that are more specific (contain more match criteria) should be listed ahead of rules that are less specific. For example, the following ACL permits all TCP traffic except any TCP traffic from subnet **100.20.20.0/24**:

```
ProCurve(config)#access-list 101 deny tcp 100.20.20.0/24 any
ProCurve(config)#access-list 101 permit tcp any any
```

In the previous example, the ACL **101** includes two rules:

1. Deny TCP packets from subnet **100.20.20.0**
2. Permit TCP packets

A TCP packet coming from subnet **10.2.0.0/16** matches the first ACL rule, which results in the packet being dropped. However, a TCP packet coming from any other subnet does not match the first ACL rule. Instead, it matches the second ACL rule, which allows the TCP packet through.

Consider the case where the ACL rules in the previous example are reversed:

```
ProCurve(config)#access-list 101 permit tcp any any
ProCurve(config)#access-list 101 deny tcp 100.20.20.0/24 any
```

All TCP packets are allowed through, including packets from subnet **100.20.20.0**. Because TCP traffic coming from **100.20.20.0** matches the first rule, “all TCP packets are allowed through.” The second rule is not applied because the first rule that matches determines the action taken on the packet.

Note

Remember that the first rule that applies to a packet is the only rule that affects the packet. The packet is permitted or denied according to the first rule it satisfies; none of the remaining ACL rules have any effect on the packet.

Implicit Deny Rule

At the end of each ACL, the switch automatically appends the *implicit deny rule*. For a packet or route that doesn't match any of the user-specified rules, the implicit deny rule acts as a catch-all rule that denies all packet or routes – all packets match this rule.

The implicit deny rule exists for security reasons. If an ACL is misconfigured, and a packet that should be allowed to go through is blocked by the implicit deny rule, the worst that happens is an inconvenience. However, a security breach results if a packet that should not be allowed through is sent through. As a result, the implicit deny rule serves as a fail-safe against the accidental misconfiguration of ACLs.

To illustrate how the implicit deny rule works, consider the following ACL:

```
ProCurve(config)#access-list 101 permit ip 100.20.30.40/24 any
ProCurve(config)#access-list 101 permit ip 124.123.220.10/24 any dscp
default
```

If a packet comes in and doesn't match either of the first two rules, the packet is dropped, because the third rule (the implicit deny rule) matches all packets. Although the implicit deny rule may seem obvious in the previous example, this is not always the case.

For example, consider the following ACL rule:

```
ProCurve(config)#access-list 102 deny ip 172.124.200.0/24 any
```

If a packet comes in from a subnet other than **172.124.200.0/24**, one might expect the packet to go through, because it doesn't match the first rule, however, this is not the case. With the implicit deny rule attached, the rule looks like this:

```
ProCurve(config)#access-list 102 deny ip 172.124.200.0/24 any
ProCurve(config)#access-list 102 deny any
```

A packet coming from a subnet other than **172.124.200.0** would not match the first rule, but would match the implicit deny rule. As a result, no packets would be allowed through.

Access Control Lists (ACLs)

Layer 3 Access Control List (ACLs)

To allow packets from a subnet other than **172.124.200.0** to pass through, a rule must be explicitly defined to permit other packets to go through. To change the previous example so that it accepts packets from other subnets, a new rule must be added ahead of the implicit deny rule that permits packets to pass.

For example:

```
ProCurve(config)#access-list 101 deny ip 10.1.20.0/24 any
ProCurve(config)#access-list 101 permit ip any any
ProCurve(config)#access-list 101 deny any
```

Notice that the second rule in this example forwards all IP packets that are not denied by the first rule, and this occurs before the implicit deny rule can be applied.

Because of the implicit deny rule, an ACL works similarly to a firewall that denies all traffic. ACL rules are then created that essentially open “doors” within the firewall that permit specific types of packets to pass.

Editing ACLs

To modify an ACL, edit it using a text editor on a remote workstation and upload it to the switch using TFTP. (You cannot edit existing ACLs from the CLI.) Edit, delete, replace, or reorder ACL rules and match criteria in a text file. The following example describes how to use this method to affect ACLs on the switch.

Suppose that ACL **104** is defined and applied to an interface on the switch, the following steps are performed to change the ACL using a text editor.

1. Use the **no** command to remove the definition and all references to ACL **104**:

```
ProCurve(config)#no access-list 104
```

2. On a workstation, enter the new ACL rules and references into the text file. In this example the text file is named **acl.changes**, which contains the changes to ACL **104** and its application to the GigabitEthernet interface:

```
access-list 104 deny tcp 10.11.0.0/16 10.12.0.0/16  
access-list 104 permit tcp 10.11.0.0 any  
interface gigabitethernet 4/1  
access-list vlan 4098 in
```

3. Once you place the file **acl.changes** on a TFTP server (for example) that is reachable by the switch, and upload it to the switch, the changes are copied to the running configuration using the following command:

```
ProCurve#copy tftp://10.1.1.12/config/acl.changes to running-config
```

The **copy** command makes the changes take effect by copying them into the running configuration.

Applying ACLs

Until it is applied, an ACL itself is simply a set of one or more rules made up of match criteria and an indicator that specifies whether to permit or deny packets that meet the rules. For an ACL to actually do something on the switch, it must be *applied* to an interface or to some application, which permits or denies traffic to or from the switch.

Applying ACLs to Interfaces

An ACL can be applied to an interface to make decisions about either inbound or outbound traffic. Inbound traffic is traffic coming into the switch. Outbound traffic is traffic going out of the switch. For each interface, only one ACL can be applied for the same protocol in the same direction. For example, you cannot apply two or more IP ACLs to the same interface in the inbound direction. You can apply two ACLs to the same interface if one is for inbound traffic and one is for outbound traffic. However, this restriction does not prevent you from specifying many rules in an ACL. Just put all of these rules into one ACL and apply it to the interface.

When a packet enters the switch through an interface where an inbound ACL is applied, the switch compares the packet to the rules specified by that ACL. If it is permitted, the packet is allowed into the switch. If not, the packet is dropped. When an outbound ACL is applied, the outbound packet is compared to the rules specified in this outbound ACL. Consequently, it is possible for a packet to go through two separate checks, once at the inbound interface and once more at the outbound interface.

To apply an ACL to an interface:

1. Within configuration mode, set your context to the interface where the criteria in the access list should be tested against inbound or outbound traffic.
2. Use the **ip access-group** command to apply an ACL to that interface.

The following example shows how to apply an ACL called 101 to all inbound packets on the gigabit ethernet slot 4 port 1 interface:

```
ProCurve(config)#interface gigabitethernet 4/1
ProCurve(config-if)#ip access-group 101 in
```

ACL Viewing

The switch provides the following show commands that you can use to display the ACLs, their rules, and their association to interfaces, ports and services.

Table 15-1. ACL Show Commands

Show Command	Action
show access-list	Show all ACL definitions
show access-list debug lcpu-count debug lcpu-count <name>	Show a specific ACL definition
show access-list show implicit-acl <name> show implicit-acl show implicit-deny	Shows debug information
show access-list show implicit-acl	Show the syntax of the implicit ACL
show access-list show implicit-deny	Show the syntax of the implicit deny ACL

Access Control Lists (ACLs)

Applying ACLs

The following is an example of the display from the **show access-list** command:

```
ProCurve#show access-list

ProCurve#show access-lists
IP access list 401
    permit tcp 192.168.1.4 0.0.0.0 10.203.10.1 0.0.0.0

IP access list 403
    deny tcp 10.20.20.0 0.0.0.255 any

    permit tcp any any

IP access list 404
    permit ip 123.1.3.10 0.0.0.255 any default

    permit ip any any

IP access list NoTelnet
    deny ip any any

IP access list triple_rule
    permit ip 10.121.96.0 0.0.0.255 any

    deny ip 141.77.132.0 255.255.255.255 any

    deny tcp any any
```

Notice that each ACL is listed along with its match criteria arranged on lines that represent the ACL's rules.

Layer 2 Access Control Lists (ACLs)

Layer 2 traffic filtering on the switch is provided by:

- Layer 2 filters - perform filtering on source or destination MAC addresses.
- Layer 2 access control lists - perform access control based on source or destination MAC address.

You can create Layer 2 filters at the port level using the **l2filter** command, or you can create a Layer 2 access control list using the **l2acl** command.

Note

When MAC address filters and Layer 2 ACLs are enabled on the same port, MAC address filter processing precedes Layer 2 ACL processing; the device either forwards or drops the traffic based on the MAC filter policies, and the traffic is not subject to Layer 2 ACL processing.

Layer 2 Filters

To configure a Layer 2 filter, enter the following command and parameters:

```
ProCurve(config)#l2filter <name of l2 filter list> lock  
<port address> aaaa.bbbb.cccc <source MAC address> vlan  
<VLAN ID> interface <port/slot>
```

Layer 2 ACLS

The following is an example of applying an ACL named *l2aclpermitany* to the source and destination MAC address:

```
ProCurve(config)#l2acl l2aclpermitany permit any any
```

The following Layer 2 ACL denies traffic from MAC address 1111.2222.3333 to MAC address 4444.5555.6666:

```
ProCurve(config)#l2acl l2denysome deny 1111.2222.3333  
4444.5555.6666
```

Access Control Lists (ACLs)

Layer 2 Access Control Lists (ACLs)

To apply a Layer 2 ACL to a specified VLAN interface on input, enter the following command:

```
ProCurve(config-if)#l2acl [police | <aclname>] vlan <vlanid>
in
```

For example, to apply an ACL called 303 for traffic inbound to VLAN 220, you would enter;

```
ProCurve(config)#interface gig 4/3
ProCurve(config-if)#l2acl 303 vlan 220 in
```

Monitoring Layer 2 ACLs

Use the following commands to display information on Layer 2 ACLs.

Table 15-2. Monitoring Layer 2 ACLs

Command	Action
show l2acl	Show all L2 ACLs
show l2acl <name>	Show the specific L2 ACL
show l2acl resource-usage slot <number>	Show the impact on resource usage of L2 ACLs

The following is an example of the display from the **acl show all** command shows resource usage by interface module 1:

```
ProCurve#show l2acl resource-usage interface-module 1
#####
L2 Rules=13, L3 Rules=4, Available=1007, Max=1024
#####
```

Protocols and Keywords

Table 15-3 shows the list of protocols you can use in a Layer 3 ACL. All of these protocols can be referenced by their decimal number. Those protocols shown with a Keyword can alternately be referenced by this Keyword rather than by their decimal number.

Table 15-3. Protocol Decimal and Keyword Equivalents

Decimal	Keyword	Protocol/References
0		Reserved [JBP]
1	ICMP	Internet Control Message [RFC792,JBP]
2	IGMP	Internet Group Management [RFC1112,JBP]
3	GGP	Gateway-to-Gateway [RFC823,MB]
4	IP	IP in IP (encapsulation) [JBP]
5	ST	Stream [RFC1190,IEN119,JWF]
6	TCP	Transmission Control [RFC793,JBP]
7	UCL	UCL [PK]
8	EGP	Exterior Gateway Protocol [RFC888,DLM1]
9	IGP	Any private interior gateway [JBP]
10	BBN-RCC-MON	BBN RCC Monitoring [SGC]
11	NVP-II	Network Voice Protocol [RFC741,SC3]
12	PUP	PUP [PUP,XEROX]
13	ARGUS	ARGUS [RWS4]
14	EMCON	EMCON [BN7]
15	XNET	Cross Net Debugger [IEN158,JFH2]
16	CHAOS	Chaos [NC3]
17	UDP	User Datagram [RFC768,JBP]
18	MUX	Multiplexing [IEN90,JBP]
19	DCN-MEAS	DCN Measurement Subsystems [DLM1]
20	HMP	Host Monitoring [RFC869,RH6]

Table 15-3. Protocol Decimal and Keyword Equivalents (Continued)

Decimal	Keyword	Protocol/References
21	PRM	Packet Radio Measurement [ZSU]
22	XNS-IDP	XEROX NS IDP [ETHERNET,XEROX]
23	TRUNK-1	Trunk-1 [BWB6]
24	TRUNK-2	Trunk-2 [BWB6]
25	LEAF-1	Leaf-1 [BWB6]
26	LEAF-2	Leaf-2 [BWB6]
27	RDP	Reliable Data Protocol [RFC908,RH6]
28	IRTP	Internet Reliable Transaction [RFC938,TXM]
29	ISO-TP4	ISO Transport Protocol Class 4 [RFC905,RC77]
30	NETBLT	Bulk Data Transfer Protocol [RFC969,DDC1]
31	MFE-NSP	MFE Network Services Protocol [MFENET,BCH2]
32	MERIT-INP	MERIT Internodal Protocol [HWB]
33	SEP	Sequential Exchange Protocol [JC120]
34	3PC	Third Party Connect Protocol [SAF3]
35	IDPR	Inter-Domain Policy Routing Protocol [MXS1]
36	XTP	XTP [GXC]
37	DDP	Datagram Delivery Protocol [WXC]
38	IDPR-CMTP	IDPR Control Message Transport Protocol [MXS1]
39	TP++	TP++ Transport Protocol [DXF]
40	IL	IL Transport Protocol [DXP2]
41	SIP	Simple Internet Protocol [SXD]
42	SDRP	Source Demand Routing Protocol [DXE1]
43	SIP-SR	SIP Source Route [SXD]
44	SIP-FRAG	SIP Fragment [SXD]
45	IDRP	Inter-Domain Routing Protocol [Sue Hares]
46	RSVP	Reservation Protocol [Bob Braden]
47	GRE	General Routing Encapsulation [Tony Li]

Table 15-3. Protocol Decimal and Keyword Equivalents (Continued)

Decimal	Keyword	Protocol/References
48	MHRP	Mobile Host Routing Protocol [David Johnson]
49	BNA	BNA [Gary Salamon]
50	SIPP-ESP	SIPP Encap Security Payload [Steve Deering]
51	SIPP-AH	SIPP Authentication Header [Steve Deering]
52	I-NLSP	Integrated Net Layer Security TUBA [GLENN]
53	SWIPE	IP with Encryption [JI6]
54	NHRP	NBMA Next Hop Resolution Protocol
55-60		Unassigned [JBP]
61		Any host internal protocol [JBP]
62	CFTP	CFTP [CFTP,HCF2]
63		Any local network [JBP]
64	SAT-EXPAK	SATNET and Backroom EXPAK [SHB]
65	KRYPTOLAN	Kryptolan [PXL1]
66	RVD	MIT Remote Virtual Disk Protocol [MBG]
67	IPPC	Internet Pluribus Packet Core [SHB]
68		Any distributed file system [JBP]
69	SAT-MON	SATNET Monitoring [SHB]
70	VISA	VISA Protocol [GXT1]
71	IPCV	Internet Packet Core Utility [SHB]
72	CPNX	Computer Protocol Network Executive [DXM2]
73	CPHB	Computer Protocol Heart Beat [DXM2]
74	WSN	Wang Span Network [VXD]
75	PVP	Packet Video Protocol [SC3]
76	BR-SAT-MON	Backroom SATNET Monitoring [SHB]
77	SUN-ND	SUN ND PROTOCOL-Temporary [WM3]
78	WB-MON	WIDEBAND Monitoring [SHB]
79	WB-EXPAK	WIDEBAND EXPAK [SHB]

Table 15-3. Protocol Decimal and Keyword Equivalents (Continued)

Decimal	Keyword	Protocol/References
80	ISO-IP	ISO Internet Protocol [MTR]
81	VMTP	VMTP [DRC3]
82	SECURE-VMTP	SECURE-VMTP [DRC3]
83	VINES	VINES [BXH]
84	TTP	TTP [JXS]
85	NSFNET-IGP	NSFNET-IGP [HWB]
86	DGP	Dissimilar Gateway Protocol [DGP,ML109]
87	TCF	TCF [GAL5]
88	IGRP	IGRP [CISCO,GXS]
89	OSPFIGP	OSPFIGP [RFC1583,JTM4]
90	Sprite-RPC	Sprite RPC Protocol [SPRITE,BXW]
91	LARP	Locus Address Resolution Protocol [BXH]
92	MTP	Multicast Transport Protocol [SXA]
93	AX.25	AX.25 Frames [BK29]
94	IPIP	IP-within-IP Encapsulation Protocol [JI6]
95	MICP	Mobile Internetworking Control Pro. [JI6]
96	SCC-SP	Semaphore Communications Sec. Pro [HXH]
97	ETHERIP	Ethernet-within-IP Encapsulation [RXH1]
98	ENCAP	Encapsulation Header [RFC1241,RXB3]
99		Any private encryption scheme [JBP]
100	GMTP	GMTP [RXB5]
101-254		Unassigned [JBP]
255		Reserved [JBP]

VRRP Configuration

Contents

Overview.....	16-2
Configuration Parameters	16-2
Setting the IP Address of the Virtual Router	16-3
Labeling the Virtual Router	16-3
Setting the Backup Priority	16-3
Setting the Advertisement Interval	16-3
Learning the Master Configuration	16-4
Setting Pre-empt Mode	16-4
VRRP Configuration Notes	16-4
Configuring VRRP	16-6
Basic VRRP Configuration	16-6
Configuration of Router R1	16-7
Configuration for Router R2	16-7
VRRP Configuration with Two Routers	16-8
Configuration of Router R1	16-9
Configuration of Router R2	16-9
Monitoring VRRP.....	16-10

Overview

This chapter explains how to set up and monitor the Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol (VRRP) on the switch. VRRP is defined in RFC 2338.

In many networks, end hosts are often configured to send packets to a statically configured default router. If this default router becomes unavailable, all the hosts that use it as their first hop router become isolated on the network.

VRRP was developed as a way to ensure the availability of an end node's default router by assigning the IP address that end hosts use as their default route to a "virtual router." A Master router is assigned to forward traffic designated for the virtual router. If the Master router should become unavailable, a backup router takes over and begins forwarding traffic for the virtual router. As long as one of the routers in a VRRP configuration is up, the IP addresses assigned to the virtual router are always available, and the end hosts can send packets to these IP addresses without interruption. Physical ports on a router are owned by that router. Using VRRP, you can configure other routers to take over as virtual routers for ports they do not own, but these virtual routers can never be owners of these ports.

Note

As of this release, the 8100fl switch is limited to fifteen virtual router instances per interface (VLAN, LAG or physical port).

Configuration Parameters

This section covers settings you can modify in a VRRP configuration, including backup priority, advertisement interval, and pre-empt mode. The following examples assume that you wish to enable and configure VRRP on VLAN 15. To configure the VRRP settings for this interface, you must first enter the appropriate VLAN configuration context as shown below:

```
ProCurve(config)#interface vlan 15
ProCurve(config-interface-vlan15)#
```

Setting the IP Address of the Virtual Router

To assign the virtual router's IP address on VLAN 15 to be 10.50.50.5, enter:

```
ProCurve(config-interface-vlan15)#vrrp 1 ip 10.50.50.5
```

Labeling the Virtual Router

You can label each virtual router for easy identification in configurations and the show commands. Labels can be up to 64 characters long (without spaces).

To identify this virtual router as Site_5_Virtual_Router, enter:

```
ProCurve(config-interface-vlan15)#vrrp 1 description  
Site_5_Virtual_Router
```

Setting the Backup Priority

You can specify which Backup router takes over when the Master router goes down by setting the priority for the Backup routers. To set the priority for a Backup router, enter the following command in Configuration mode:

To specify 200 as the priority used by virtual router 1 on VLAN 15:

```
ProCurve(config-interface-vlan15)#vrrp 1 priority 200
```

Priority levels can be between 1 (lowest) and 255. The default is 100. The priority for the IP address owner is 255 and cannot be changed.

Setting the Advertisement Interval

The VRRP Master router sends periodic advertisement messages to let the other routers know that the Master is up and running. In other words, VRRP routers learn timer settings from each other, not from their configuration file settings. By default, advertisement messages are sent once per second. To change the VRRP advertisement interval, enter the following command in Configuration mode:

To set the advertisement interval to 3 seconds:

```
ProCurve(config-interface-vlan15)#vrrp 1 timers advertise 3
```

Learning the Master Configuration

When the Master router goes down, the Backup router takes over. When an interface comes up, the Master router may become available and take over from the Backup router. Before the Master router takes over, it may have to update its routing tables.

To learn the VRRP configuration for a Master router before the Backup takes over:

```
ProCurve(config-interface-vlan15)#vrrp 1 timers learn  
<description|ip|preempt|priority>
```

Setting Pre-empt Mode

When a Master router goes down, the Backup with the highest priority takes over the IP addresses associated with the Master. By default, when the original Master comes back up again, it takes over from the Backup router that assumed its role as Master. When a VRRP router does this, it is said to be in *pre-empt mode*. Pre-empt mode is enabled by default on the switch. You can prevent a VRRP router from taking over from a lower-priority Master by disabling pre-empt. To do this, enter the following command in VLAN configuration mode:

```
ProCurve(config-interface-vlan15)#no vrrp 1 preempt
```

Note

If the IP address owner is available, then it will always take over as the Master, regardless of whether pre-empt mode is on or off.

VRRP Configuration Notes

- You can specify up to 15 VRRP instances; each virtual router ID (VRID) can be numbered within the range of <1-15>.
- If multiple virtual routers are created on a single interface, the virtual routers must have unique identifiers. If virtual routers are created on different interfaces, you can reuse virtual router IDs.
- The Master router sends keep-alive advertisements. The frequency of these keep-alive advertisements is determined by setting the Advertisement interval parameter. The default value is 1 second.

- If a Backup router doesn't receive a keep-alive advertisement from the current Master within a certain period of time, it will transition to the Master state and start sending advertisements itself. The amount of time that a Backup router will wait before it becomes the new Master is based on the following equation:

$$\text{Master-down-interval} = (3 * \text{advertisement-interval}) + \text{skew-time}$$

The skew-time depends on the Backup router's configured priority:

$$\text{Skew-time} = ((256 - \text{Priority}) / 256)$$

Therefore, the higher the priority, the faster a Backup router will detect that the Master is down. For example:

- Default advertisement-interval = 1 second
- Default Backup router priority = 100
- Master-down-interval = time it takes a Backup to detect the Master is down

$$\begin{aligned} &= (3 * \text{adv-interval}) + \text{skew-time} \\ &= (3 * 1 \text{ second}) + ((256 - 100) / 256) \\ &= 3.6 \text{ seconds} \end{aligned}$$

- If a Master router is manually rebooted, or if its interface is manually brought down, it will send a special keep-alive advertisement that lets the Backup routers know that a new Master is needed immediately.
- A virtual router will respond to ARP requests with a virtual MAC address. This virtual MAC depends on the virtual router ID:

$$\text{virtual MAC address} = 00005E:0001xy$$

where *xy* is the virtual router ID (in hexadecimal format)

This virtual MAC address is also used as the source MAC address of the keep-alive Advertisements transmitted by the Master router.

- As specified in RFC 2338, a Backup router that has transitioned to Master will not respond to pings, accept Telnet sessions, or field SNMP requests directed at the virtual router's IP address.

By not responding the Backup router allows network management to notice that the original Master router (that is, the IP address owner) is down.

Configuring VRRP

This section presents two sample VRRP configurations:

- A basic VRRP configuration with one virtual router
- A symmetrical VRRP configuration with two virtual routers

Note

The 8100fl switch is limited to up to fifteen unique virtual router configurations per interface (physical port, LAG, or VLAN). The virtual router ID (VRID) for each instance must be numbered within the range of <1-15>. VRIDs can be re-used, but not on the same interface.

Basic VRRP Configuration

Figure 16-1 shows a basic VRRP configuration with a single virtual router enabled on VLAN 15. Routers R1 and R2 are both configured with one virtual router (VRID=1). Router R1 serves as the Master and Router R2 serves as the Backup. The four end hosts (H1 - H4) are configured to use 10.0.0.1/24 as the default route. IP address 10.0.0.1/24 is associated with virtual router VRID=1.

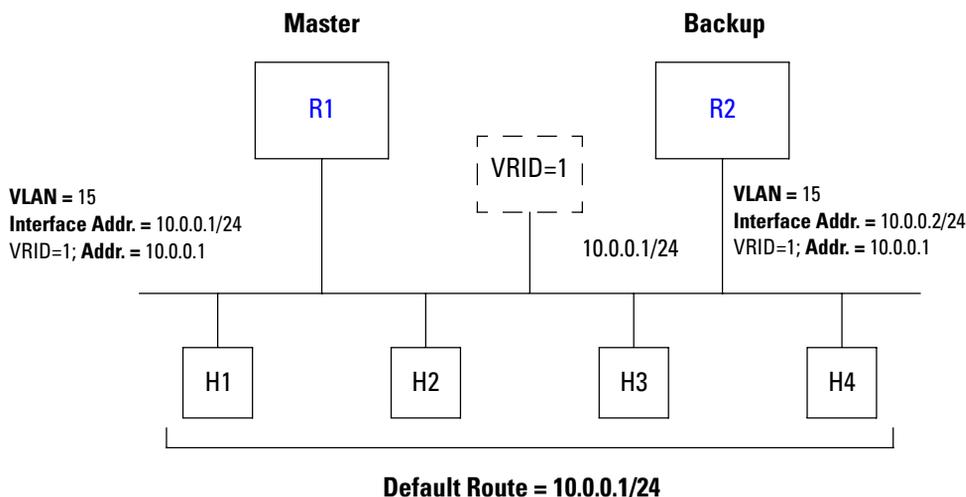


Figure 16-1. Basic VRRP configuration

If Router R1 should become unavailable, Router R2 would take over virtual router **VRID=1** and its associated IP addresses. Packets sent to 10.0.0.1/24 would go to Router R2. When Router R1 comes up again, it would take over as Master, and Router R2 would revert to Backup.

Configuration of Router R1

The following is the configuration file for Router R1 in Figure 16-1.

```
Router1(config)#
Router1(config)#interface vlan 15
Router1(config-interface-vlan15)#ip address 10.0.0.1/24
Router1(config-interface-vlan15)#vrrp 1 ip 10.0.0.1

Router1(config)#interface gigabitethernet 4/3
Router1(config-interface-gig4/3)#switchport mode access vlan 15
```

Creates virtual router **VRID=1** on the VLAN 15 interface, and associates IP address 10.0.0.1 with virtual router VRID=1.

Declares the physical interface by configuring port 4/3 for VLAN 15

In VRRP, the router that owns the IP address associated with the virtual router is the Master. Any other routers that participate with this virtual router are the Backups. In this configuration, Router R1 is the Master for virtual router **VRID=1** because it owns 10.0.0.1, the IP address associated with virtual router **VRID=1**.

Configuration for Router R2

The following is the configuration file for Router R2 in Figure 16-1.

```
Router2(config)#interface vlan 15
Router2(config-interface-vlan15)#ip address 10.0.0.2/24
Router2(config-interface-vlan15)#vrrp 1 ip 10.0.0.1

Router2(config)#interface gigabitethernet 1/3
Router2(config-interface-gig1/3)#switchport mode access vlan 15
```

The configuration for Router R2 is nearly identical to Router R1. The difference is that Router R2 does not own IP address 10.0.0.1/24. Since Router R2 does not own this IP address, it is the Backup. It will take over from the Master if the Master should become unavailable.

VRRP Configuration with Two Routers

Figure 16-2 shows a symmetrical VRRP configuration with two routers and two virtual routers. Routers R1 and R2 are both configured with two virtual routers (**VRID=1** and **VRID=2**).

Router R1 serves as:

- Master for **VRID=1**
- Backup for **VRID=2**

Router R2 serves as:

- Master for **VRID=2**
- Backup for **VRID=1**

This configuration allows you to load-balance traffic coming from the hosts on the 10.0.0.0/24 subnet and provides a redundant path to either virtual router.

Note

This symmetrical configuration is the recommended configuration on a network using VRRP.

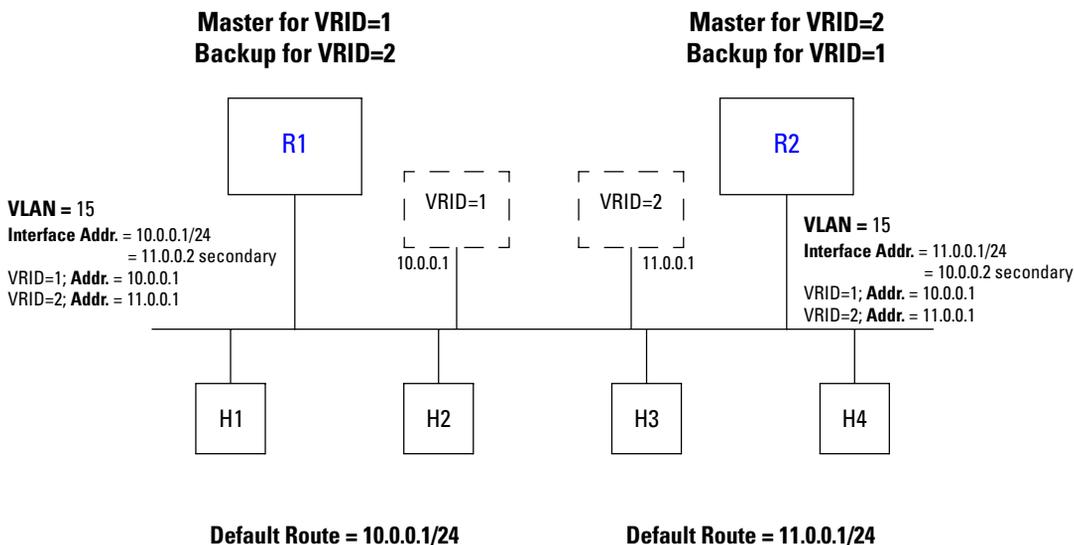


Figure 16-2. Symmetrical VRRP configuration

In this configuration, half the hosts use 10.0.0.1/24 as their default route, and half use 11.0.0.1/24. IP address 10.0.0.1/24 is associated with virtual router **VRID=1**, and IP address 11.0.0.1 is associated with virtual router **VRID=2**.

If Router R1, the Master for virtual router **VRID=1**, goes down, Router R2 would take over the IP address 10.0.0.1/24. Similarly, if Router R2, the Master for virtual router **VRID=2**, goes down, Router R1 would take over the IP address 11.0.0.1.

Configuration of Router R1

In this configuration, VLAN 15 on Router R1 is the owner of IP address 10.0.0.1. The following is the configuration file for Router R1 in [Figure 16-2](#).

```
Router1(config)#
Router1(config)#interface vlan 15
Router1(config-interface-vlan15)#ip address 10.0.0.1/24
Router1(config-interface-vlan15)#ip address 11.0.0.2/24 secondary
Router1(config-interface-vlan15)#vrrp 1 ip 10.0.0.1
Router1(config-interface-vlan15)#vrrp 2 ip 11.0.0.1
Router1(config-interface-vlan15)#exit

Router1(config)#interface gigabitethernet 4/3
Router1(config-interface-gig4/3)#switchport mode access vlan 15
```

This line associates IP address 10.0.0.1 with virtual router VRID=1, so Router R1 is the Master for virtual router VRID=1.

Router R1 associates IP address 11.0.0.1 with virtual router VRID=2. However, since Router R1 does not own IP address 10.0.0.2, it is not the default Master for virtual router VRID=2.

The last two lines declare the physical interface by configuring Router 1's port 4/3 for VLAN 15.

Configuration of Router R2

The following is the configuration file for Router R2 in [Figure 16-2](#).

```
Router2(config)#interface vlan 15
Router2(config-interface-vlan15)#ip address 11.0.0.1/24
Router2(config-interface-vlan15)#ip address 10.0.0.2/24 secondary
Router2(config-interface-vlan15)#vrrp 1 ip 10.0.0.1
Router2(config-interface-vlan15)#vrrp 2 ip 11.0.0.1
Router2(config-interface-vlan15)#
Router2(config-interface-vlan15)#exit

Router2(config)#interface gigabitethernet 1/3
Router2(config-interface-gig1/3)#switchport mode access vlan 15
```

This line associates IP address 10.0.0.1 with virtual router VRID=1. However, since Router R2 does not own IP address 10.0.0.1, it is not the default Master for virtual router VRID=1.

Router R2 associates IP address 11.0.0.1 with virtual router VRID=2, so Router R2 is the Master for virtual router VRID=2.

The last two lines declare the physical interface by configuring Router 2's port 1/3 for VLAN 15.

Monitoring VRRP

The **show vrrp** command reports information about a VRRP configuration. You can specify individual VRIDs, or interfaces. You can tailor the display to show summary information using the **show vrrp brief** command.

You can focus displayed information using output modifiers to customize the information returned. For example, to show information about all virtual routers on GigabitEthernet interface 4/5

```
ProCurve#show vrrp interface gig 4/5

Interface Gig4/5 - Group 5 ("This_is_VRID_5")
-----
Uptime                Interface is currently down
State                 Init
Priority              1 (configured by the user)
Virtual MAC address   00005E:000105
Advertise Interval    25000 msec(s) (configured by the
user)
Preempt Mode          enabled delay = 0 msec(s)
Master Down Interval  75000
Primary Address       10.10.20.1
Associated Addresses  10.50.50.5
```

To display VRRP statistics for virtual router 5 on interface GigabitEthernet 4/5:

```
ProCurve#show vrrp 5

Interface Gig4/5 - Group 5 ("This_is_VRID_5")
-----
Uptime                Interface is currently down
State                 Init
Priority              1 (configured by the user)
Virtual MAC address   00005E:000105
Advertise Interval    25000 msec(s) (configured by the
user)
Preempt Mode          enabled delay = 0 msec(s)
Master Down Interval  75000
Primary Address       10.10.20.1
Associated Addresses  10.50.50.5
```

To display VRRP information on all interfaces and VRIDs, enter the **show vrrp** command in Privileged Exec mode.

Time Configuration

Contents

Overview.....	17-2
Setting the Date and Time	17-2
Using NTP.....	17-3
Clock Synchronization	17-3

Overview

This chapter discusses how to set time on the 8100fl switch and how to use the pool of Network Time Protocol (NTP) servers to set the clock to Universal Coordinated Time (UTC).

Setting the Date and Time

To set the date and time on the 8100fl switch, use the **clock set** command in Privileged Exec mode. Enter the time as UTC time. Once you enter the command, the date and time are written to the hardware real-time clock.

To set the system date and time (assuming you are at the Exec (>) prompt):

1. Enter the **enable** command to get to Privileged Exec mode in the CLI.
2. Enter the following commands to set the system time and date and to verify your settings.

```
ProCurve#clock set <HH:MM:SS> <1...31> <month name> <Year>  
  
ProCurve#show clock [details]
```

Notes

- If Network Time Protocol (NTP) is configured, using the **clock set** command will reset NTP.
- Since the 8100fl switch displays system time in Greenwich Mean Time (GMT), also known as Coordinated Universal Time (UTC), you must enter the hours portion of the time with the correct UTC value. The switch does not convert your local timezone into the appropriate UTC timezone. For more information on converting local timezones into UTC zones, see: <http://times.clari.net.au/>.

For example, the following command sets the date to March 5, 2006 and the time to 8:10:40 A.M., Pacific Standard Time:

```
ProCurve#clock set 16:10:40 5 march 2006
```

In this example, to convert PST to UTC, first convert the local time into a 24-hour clock format, 08:10:40. Then add 8 to convert to UTC. This gives the time conversion as 16:10:40. A slightly more complicated conversion occurs when adding 8 (for PST) forces the 24-hour clock into the next morning. In this case, make sure you enter the date correctly - as the next day.

For example, to convert 8:30 PM on March 5 from PST to UTC, you would convert 8:30 PM to 20:30 hours. Adding 8 to convert to UTC gives you 04:30 hours, on March 6.

Use the **show clock** command in Privileged Exec mode to display the current date and time on the 8100fl switch. For example:

```
ProCurve#show clock
*16:10:40 UTC Wed Mar 5 2006
```

Using NTP

Network Time Protocol (NTP) synchronizes the clocks on devices in a network to UTC, ensuring consistent and accurate times across network operations. If your local ProCurve 8100fl time differs too much from the time held by the pool of NTP servers (typical of when the ProCurve 8100fl is starting up), NTP will force the clock to the NTP time. Normally, NTP will make minor adjustments to keep time by speeding up or slowing down the ProCurve 8100fl clock. For more information on NTP, refer to RFC 1305.

Clock Synchronization

To cause the switch to synchronize its clock with an NTP server, use the **ntp server** command. For example, the following command causes the switch to synchronize its clock with the NTP server with IP address 10.100.1.10:

```
ProCurve(config)#ntp server 10.100.1.10
```

Time Configuration Using NTP

The following example shows a typical configuration of NTP servers. (The * symbol indicates the ip address of the server the switch is synchronized against, the = symbol identifies an additional ntp server.) Use the **detail** parameter to display all of the NTP statistics.

```
ProCurve(config)#show ntp associations
remote          local          st poll reach delay offset disp
=====
*10.200.1.2     10.203.11.27   3   64  377 0.00031 0.024771 0.00006
=10.200.1.5     10.203.11.27   3   64  377 0.00029 0.030663 0.00012
```

The following example shows the NTP status of the system synchronized at 10.200.1.2:

```
ProCurve(config)#show ntp status
system peer:          10.200.1.2
system peer mode:     client
leap indicator:       00
stratum:              4
precision:            -18
root distance:        0.08955 s
root dispersion:      0.09282 s
reference ID:         [10.200.1.2]
reference time:       c21144bd.7e63736c Thu, Mar 6 2003 3:53:33.493
system flags:         monitor ntp kernel stats pps
jitter:               0.000397 s
stability:            1.837 ppm
broadcastdelay:       0.003998 s
authdelay:            0.000000 s
```

Note If your switch is not synchronized, the NTP status will not display.

SNMP Configuration

Contents

Overview.....	18-2
Configuring Access to MIB Objects	18-2
Configuring Community Strings	18-4
Configuring the SNMP Agent	18-4
Configuring SNMP Notifications	18-5
Specifying the Notification Targets	18-5
Enabling/Disabling SNMP	18-6
MIB Modules	18-6
Loading MIBs	18-7
Enabling/Disabling MIB Modules	18-8
Displaying SNMP Information	18-9
Troubleshooting SNMP	18-10
SNMP Notifications	18-11

Overview

The Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) is an application layer protocol used to monitor and manage TCP/IP-based networks. It provides for the storage and exchange of management information.

The 8100fl switch supports the following SNMP versions:

- SNMP Version 1 (SNMPv1) (RFC 1157)
- SNMP Version 2c (SNMPv2c) (RFC 1901, RFC 1905, and RFC 1906)

Both versions of SNMP can coexist in the same managed network (RFC 2576). You should configure the switch to run the SNMP version(s) supported by the SNMP management stations. You can run both SNMP versions on the 8100fl switch, depending on the one used by the SNMP management stations. (For additional information on the different SNMP versions, refer to the RFCs for each version.)

You can use the CLI to configure various SNMP tasks. This chapter described how to perform these tasks. It contains the following sections:

- To configure access to the Management Information Base (MIB) objects, refer to [“Configuring Access to MIB Objects” on page 18-3](#).
- To configure notifications, refer to [“Configuring SNMP Notifications” on page 18-4](#).
- To configure SNMP MIB modules and for a list of MIB modules supported by the 8100fl switch, refer to [“MIB Modules” on page 18-6](#).
- To information on verifying and troubleshooting your SNMP configuration, refer to [“Displaying SNMP Information” on page 18-9](#).
- For a list of SNMP notifications, refer to [“SNMP Notifications” on page 18-11](#).

Configuring Access to MIB Objects

The 8100fl switch supports many of the standard networking SNMP MIB modules. Each module is a collection of managed objects which can be accessed by the SNMP management stations. (For a list of MIB modules supported by the 8100fl switch, refer to “MIB Modules” on page 18-6).

SNMP management stations send SNMP SET and GET requests for the management objects stored in the MIB modules. The 8100fl switch runs an SNMP agent, which is a software process that listens for these SNMP requests on UDP port 161. In SNMPv1 and v2c, the SNMP managers provide a community string (or password) when they send their requests. If the switch recognizes the community string, it processes the request. If it doesn't recognize the community string, it discards the message and increments the bad community name error counter (which can be viewed through the **show snmp** command).

The following sections describe how to configure access to the MIB modules for each SNMP version.

Note

By default, the 8100fl switch does not listen for traffic on port 161. When you configure a community, SNMP starts listening for traffic on this port and accumulates statistics that you can view using the **show snmp** command.

Configuring SNMP Access

Following are the tasks for configuring SNMP access if you are running SNMPv1 and v2c:

- Configure a community string.
- Configure the agent's identity.

Configuring Community Strings

To run SNMPv1 and v2c on the switch, you must have at least one community string. By default, the 8100fl switch has a read-only community string called “public”.

When you define an SNMP community string, you also need to specify its access level, which is either read-only (allows only SNMP GETs), or read-write (allows SNMP SETs and GETs).

In the following example, separate community strings are defined for read-only access and for read-write access:

```
ProCurve(config)#snmp community red ro
ProCurve(config)#snmp community blue rw
```

An SNMP manager that sends a GET request for a MIB object can provide the community string *red* or *blue*; and an SNMP manager that sends a SET request should provide the community string *blue* (in this example).

Note The 8100fl switch supports SNMP set only on the ifAdminStatus MIB object.

Configuring the SNMP Agent

You can use the CLI to set certain MIB objects, such as those that describe the agent's identity, as shown in the following example:

```
ProCurve(config)#snmp contact IT dept
ProCurve(config)#snmp location building 1 closet
ProCurve(config)#snmp chassis-id s/n12345
ProCurve(config)#snmp mib if-mib
```

The example sets the MIB objects `sysContact` to *IT dept*, `sysLocation` to *building 1 closet*, and `hp-switch-fl-series-inventory-mib ChassisId` to *s/n12345*, and enables the `if-mib` (RFC 2863).

Configuring SNMP Notifications

The 8100fl switch sends notifications to pre-defined targets. The targets are the SNMP management stations that receive the notifications. Notifications inform the SNMP managers about conditions on the network, such as an error condition or an authentication failure.

The tasks for configuring SNMP notifications are as follows:

- Specifying the targets. This is required.
- Configuring the notification's source address.

Specifying the Notification Targets

To send SNMP notifications, you need to specify the following:

- The targets that will receive the notifications
- A community string

Targets are defined by their IP addresses. Each target that is defined receives a copy of the notifications generated and sent by the ProCurve 8100fl agent.

In addition, you need to specify a community string for the notifications. For security reasons, the community strings in notifications should be different from the read/write community strings. So when the 8100fl switch sends notifications, unauthorized users who capture the notifications will not be able to use the community string to access the MIB modules.

In the following example, the notifications will be sent to the target with address 10.10.10.1 (and a community string of “western”):

```
ProCurve(config)#snmp community community1 ro
ProCurve(config)#snmp host 10.10.10.1 western
```

Note

If the IP address of the target is more than one hop away from the switch, configure the switch with a static route to the target. If the switch is rebooted, the static route allows a cold-start notification to be sent to the target. Without a static route, the cold-start notification is lost while the routing protocols are converging.

Enabling/Disabling SNMP

By default, SNMP is active and monitoring UDP port 161. You can turn off SNMP by entering:

```
ProCurve(config)#no snmp active
```

To restart SNMP, enter:

```
ProCurve(config)#snmp active
```

SNMP will issue a warmStart notification and resume monitoring port 161.

Note

The **snmp active** command runs independently of your SNMP configuration. You must still configure SNMP. The **no snmp active** command is a useful alternative to negating lines in your configuration file when you need to disable SNMP.

MIB Modules

The 8100fl switch supports the following MIB modules. You can use these modules with any SNMP version.

Table 18-1. Release 1.0 Supported MIBs

MIB Name	RFC Standard
SNMPv2-MIB	RFC 1907
IP-MIB	RFC 2011
TCP-MIB	RFC 2012
UDP-MIB	RFC 2013
IP-FORWARD-MIB	RFC 2096
IF-MIB	RFC 2863
ENTITY-MIB	RFC 2737
HP-SWITCH-FL-SERIES-INVENTORY-MIB	n/a

Loading MIBs

The order in which you load MIBs into an application is important. The following MIB modules should already be loaded (so you do not have to):

- SNMPv2-SMI
- SNMPv2-TC
- SNMPv2-CONF
- SNMP-FRAMEWORK-MIB

Some of the following list of IETF standard MIB modules may already be loaded, so you do not need to load them again (unless they are newer versions). Load them in the order shown—with the HP Switch proprietary MIB module at the end.

Caution

Do not inadvertently overwrite an older version of a MIB module with a newer one without first backing up that module. Devices from other vendors that support older versions, may not work with the newer version of the module.

- SNMPv2-MIB
- IF-MIB
- IP-MIB
- TCP-MIB
- UDP-MIB
- IP-FORWARD-MIB
- ENTITY-MIB
- HP-SWITCH-FL-SERIES-INVENTORY-MIB

Enabling/Disabling MIB Modules

All MIB modules are enabled (or online) by default. Use the **snmp mib ?** command to display supported MIBs. For this release, the 8100fl switch supports the following MIBs:

```
ProCurve(config)#snmp mib ?
entity-mib          - rfc2737 specific system details
if-mib              - Interface status and generic counters per RFC 2863
ip-forward-mib      - IPv4 CIDR forwarding database per RFC 2096
ip-mib              - Counters for IP and ICMP version 4 per RFC 2011
hp-switch-fl-series-inventory-mib - HP switch inventory details
snmpv2-mib          - System detail, SNMPv1/v2c/v3 counters per RFC 1907
tcp-mib             - Counters for Transmission Control Protocol, IP
version 4 per RFC 2012
udp-mib             - Counters for User Datagram Protocol, IP version 4
per RFC 2013
```

All MIB modules can be accessed by SNMP management stations that provide the correct community strings. You may want to provide access to a smaller set of MIB modules. To do so, you can “disable” MIB modules by using the **no snmp mib** command as shown in the following example:

```
ProCurve(config)#no snmp mib hp-switch-fl-series-inventory-
mib
```

You can then view the MIB modules, including their status, as shown in [“Displaying SNMP Information” on page 18-9](#).

Displaying SNMP Information

The **show snmp** command is used to display SNMP configuration information. The status of the notifications are listed at the bottom of the output.

```
ProCurve(config)#show snmp
agent operational 343 seconds
In/out packets: 0/0 last:
last error occurred on:
Bad version : 0
Bad community name: 0
Bad community uses: 0
ASN Parse Errors : 0
Too bigs : 0/0
No such name : 0/0
Bad value : 0/0
Read Only : 0
General Error : 0/0
command distribution
Get requests : 0/0 (0.00%)
GetNext requests : 0/0 (0.00%)
Set requests : 0/0 (0.00%)
Get responses : 0/0 (0.00% of in packets)
Variables had/set : 0/0
Silent/Proxy drops : 0/0
Traps sent/received : 2/0 last: Fri Mar 7 00:49:27 2005
ProCurve(config)#
```

For information on snmp location, contact and host, use the commands that are shown below:

```
ProCurve(config)#show snmp location
location: Bunker Hill Lane
ProCurve(config)#
ProCurve(config)#show snmp contact
contact: Umesh
ProCurve(config)#
ProCurve(config)#show snmp host
Address community port
10.200.118.245 private 162
ProCurve(config)#
```

For information on MIB versions and status, use the `show snmp mib-modules` command as shown below:

```
ProCurve(config)#show snmp mib-modules
SNMP AGENT MIB Registry
Last Modified: 0 days 0 hours 0 min 4 secs
Index  Name                                     Version  Status
-----  -----
1      SNMPv2-MIB                                 1907     online
2      IF-MIB                                     2863     online
3      IP-MIB                                     2011     online
4      TCP-MIB                                    2012     online
5      UDP-MIB                                    2013     online
6      IP-FORWARD-MIB                            2096     online
7      ENTITY-MIB                                2737     online
8      HP-SWITCH-FL-SERIES-INVENTORY-MIB        --       online
```

Troubleshooting SNMP

SNMP misconfigurations typically generate the following error when you enter the `show snmp` command:

```
ProCurve(config)#show snmp
%SNMP agent not enabled
ProCurve(config)#
```

If you receive this error:

- Make sure you have configured a community string (see [“Configuring Community Strings”](#) on page 18-3).
- Make sure SNMP is enabled (see [“Enabling/Disabling SNMP”](#) on page 18-5).
- Use the `show snmp` command and examine the output to verify your configuration.

SNMP Notifications

Table 18-2 lists the notifications that SNMP generates for this release.

Table 18-2. ProCurve 8100fi SNMP Notifications

N	Notification Type (OID with name)	MIB	VB List
Notifications from standard MIB modules			
1	coldStart OID: 1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.1	SNMPv2-MIB	No List
2	warmStart OID: 1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.2	SNMPv2-MIB	No list
3	linkDown OID: 1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.3	IF-MIB	1: ifIndex 2: ifAdminStatus 3: ifOperStatus 4: ifDescr
4	linkUP OID: 1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.4	IF-MIB	1: ifIndex 2: ifAdminStatus 3: ifOperStatus 4: ifDescr
5	authenticationFailure OID: 1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.5	SNMPv2-MIB	No List
Notifications from HP switch proprietary MIB module			
6	hotSwapOut OID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.11.2.14.11.8.1.33.1.2.0.8	HP-SWITCH-FL- SERIES- INVENTORY- MIB	1: entPhysicalDescr 2: entPhysicalIndex 3: Trapdescription
7	hotSwapIn OID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.11.2.14.11.8.1.33.1.2.0.7		1: entPhysicalDescr 2: entPhysicalIndex 3: Trapdescription
8	TemperatureExceeded OID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.11.2.14.11.8.1.33.1.2.0.5		1: entPhysicalDescr 2: entPhysicalIndex 3: Trapdescription
9	fanFailed OID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.11.2.14.11.8.1.33.1.2.0.3		1: entPhysicalDescr 2: entPhysicalIndex 3: Trapdescription
10	PowerSupplyFailed OID: 1.3.6.1.4.1.11.2.14.11.8.1.33.1.2.0.1		1: entPhysicalDescr 2: entPhysicalIndex 3: Trapdescription

— *This page is intentionally unused.* —

Performance Monitoring

Contents

Overview.....	19-2
Show Commands.....	19-2
Debug Commands.....	19-5
Clear Commands.....	19-6
Error Reporting and Message Logging.....	19-7
Disabling/Enabling Message Logging	19-7
Specifying Logging Locations	19-7
Configuring the Syslog Host	19-8
Setting Source Interface for Syslog Messages	19-8
Displaying Logging Messages	19-8
Displaying Crash Log Files	19-9
Setting the Severity Level of Messages	19-9
Controlling the Size of the Log and Messages	19-10
Time-Stamping Messages	19-10
Setting Temperature Thresholds	19-10
Configuring Port Mirroring.....	19-11
Port Mirroring Limitations	19-11

Overview

The 8100fl switch performs as a full wire-speed Layer 2, Layer 3, and Layer 4 switching router, and is capable of displaying performance information at each layer. As packets enter the switch, Layer 2, 3, and 4 flow tables are populated on each interface module. The flow tables contain information on performance statistics and traffic forwarding.

This chapter discusses the following topics dealing with monitoring performance and traffic:

- Show commands
- Debug commands
- Clear commands
- Logging Messages

Show Commands

Layer 2 performance information is accessible to SNMP through MIB-II and can be displayed by using the **show snmp** command in the CLI. Layer 3 and 4 performance statistics can be displayed by using the **show statistics** command in the CLI.

To display configuration and system information on the 8100fl switch, enter the following commands in Privileged Exec mode:

Command	Function
show aaa method-lists	Show authentication, authorization, and accounting (aaa) method-lists
show aaa servers	Show security server information for RADIUS or TACACS+ servers.
show access-lists	Show access-list entries
show arp	Show ARP entries
show bootvar	Show boot related information

show bridge fib	Show bridging information
show bridge mac-table	Show master MAC table information
show clock	Show information about the system clock
show configuration	Show configuration data in flash
show device-logging	Show how the terminal, host, and buffer are configured for logging
show environment	Show environmental conditions of the chassis
show hardware	Show information on installed hardware components
show history	Show the command history buffer
show images	Show the system files stored on the system
show interfaces	Show information on all configured interfaces
show ip	Show IP entries
show ip arp	Show IP ARP entries
show ip interface	Show current status of IP interfaces
show ip ospf	Show Open Shortest Path First (OSPF) protocol information
show ip prefix-list	Show specified prefix lists
show ip protocols	Show all IP routing protocol information
show ip route	Show current status of IP routes
show ip rxstats	Show L3 receive statistics
show ip traffic	Show IP traffic statistics for specified interface modules
show l2-vlan-translate	Show L2 VLAN translation statistics
show l2acl	Show L2 access-list entries and resource usage
show lacp	Show LACP related info
show lag	Show LAG parameters
show logging	Show log buffer
show memory	Show process/system memory consumption
show module	Show interface module information
show ntp	Show Network Time Protocol (NTP) information

show pinger	Show pinger gateway information
show policy	Show IP policies
show port	Show Layer 2 port related information
show process	Show resource usage per process
show radius servers	Show Remote Access Dial-in User Service (RADIUS) server information
show redundancy	Show the status of redundant modules
show reload	Show pending reload information for the entire chassis or for specified interface modules
show route-map	Show route-map entries
show running-config	Show current operating configuration
show snmp	Show Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) agent information
show spolicy-input-map	Show all input spolicy maps and their matching criteria
show spolicy-output-map	Show all output spolicy maps and their matching criteria
show startup-config	Show contents of startup configuration
show statistics	Show interface statistics for configured ports
show stp	Show default Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) information
show system-mac	Show system MAC address
show tacacs servers	Show Terminal Access Controller Access Control System (TACACS) server information
show tech-support	Shows current configuration and process status that is of interest to technical support personnel
show terminal	Show terminal line parameters
show upgrade-status	Show the software upgrade status
show users	Show active user sessions
show version	Show system software version
show vlan	Show VLAN parameters
show vrrp	Show status of VRRP groups

Note

All the show commands are accessible at the Privileged Exec mode. Many show commands are accessible from various configuration modes, and a limited number of show commands are available at the Exec mode level.

Debug Commands

To gather information on selected processes and to control tracing, enter the following commands from the Privileged Exec mode:

Command	Function
debug aaa	Gather debugging information and statistics on Authentication, Authorization, and Accounting (aaa)
debug radius	Gather Remote Access Dial In User Service (RADIUS) protocol information
debug tacacs	Gather Terminal Access Controller Access Control System (TACACS+) protocol information
debug vrrp	Gather Virtual Redundant Router Protocol (VRRP) debug information

Clear Commands

To delete data from the system, use the following commands from the Privileged Exec mode:

Command	Function
clear access-list	Clear access-list counters for a specified Access Control List.
clear arp	Clear the Address Resolution Protocol (arp) entry IP address.
clear arp-cache	Clear the Address Resolution Protocol (arp) cache.
clear bridge mac-table	Delete MAC entries from the MAC address table.
clear history	Clear the EXEC level history list.
clear ip ospf	Clear the IP OSPF counters, processes, and commands.
clear ip traffic	Clear IP traffic statistics.
clear l2acl	Clear layer 2 acl counters for a specified Access Control List and port.
clear lacp	Clears Link Access Control Protocol (LACP) data unit statistics.
clear logging	Empty the log buffer.
clear screen	Wipe the terminal screen clean and reposition the cursor at the top left corner.
clear statistics	Delete Ethernet statistics for the specified port.

Error Reporting and Message Logging

Individual file system commands will report application specific errors as part of their normal output. ERRLOG messages will be generated on the following events:

- A physical file system becomes full
- A user attempts to overwrite or remove a read-only system file
- File system operation fails
- Any other catastrophic failure

The 8100fl switch logs system error messages by default. This section discusses how you can control where these messages are stored, how many messages are kept, what level of severity the messages will be, and how to turn off logging.

Disabling/Enabling Message Logging

To disable message logging, enter:

```
ProCurve#no logging terminal
```

To re-enable message logging if it has been disabled, enter:

```
ProCurve#logging terminal [all]
```

To modify the logging settings, instead of specifying **all**, specify the name of the process or device from the supported list of logging terminal options.

Specifying Logging Locations

You can specify that system logs be sent to the system console, local logs, or in a Unix-style syslog format.

When you configure messages to be sent to the console and the logging process is enabled, the messages are displayed on the console after the process that generated them has finished. When the logging process is disabled, messages are sent only to the console.

The syslog format is compatible with 4.3 Berkeley Standard Distribution (BSD) Unix.

To set the locations that receive messages (buffer, console, or syslog respectively), use the following commands in Configuration mode.

Command	Function
logging buffered	Set buffered logging.
logging host	Set host logging. Requires an <ip address>.
logging terminal	Set terminal logging.

Configuring the Syslog Host

Use the following Configuration command to configure the syslog host:

```
ProCurve(config)#logging host <ipaddr> [all]
```

Setting Source Interface for Syslog Messages

To set the source interface for syslog messages, enter the following command:

```
ProCurve(config)#logging source <ipaddr>
```

Note

This command instructs logging to send syslog only on the specified interface, and enables the network management to see a valid source ip address in a syslog message. If you do not specify a host source ip address, the default value would be 0.0.0.0 giving no indication where the message comes from.

Displaying Logging Messages

To display log messages from the buffer (instead of the log buffer), use the following command in Privileged Exec mode:

```
ProCurve#show logging [all]
```

To modify the logging display, instead of specifying **all**, specify the name of the process or device from the supported list of logging terminal options.

To display information about the log buffer, enter from Privileged Exec mode:

```
ProCurve#show logging history
```

When logging is buffered, the following Privileged Exec command is useful to display logged messages:

```
ProCurve#show logging
```

The following Privileged Exec command can be used to clear the log buffer:

```
ProCurve#clear logging
```

Displaying Crash Log Files

To display a log file after a crash occurs, enter the following command:

```
ProCurve#dir flash:
```

This will list the files located in the flash directory. The crash log file ends with the suffix “core”. Depending on which process has crashed, the appropriate process name will be the prefix of that core file name.

Once you locate the crash log `<process_name>.core` file, you can use the standard `tftp` command from the CLI to access the file so it can be sent to ProCurve support to troubleshoot the cause of the problem.

Setting the Severity Level of Messages

You can set the message severity level to control the type of messages displayed for the console and each destination.

You can limit the number of messages displayed to the selected device by specifying the severity level of the error messages. To do so, use the following commands in Configuration mode, as needed:

```
ProCurve(config)#logging terminal all
```

You can limit the logging of messages by specifying the alert level as follows:

- Emergency System is unusable (severity = 0)
- Alert Immediate action needed (severity = 1)
- Critical Critical conditions (severity = 2)
- Error Error conditions (severity = 3)
- Warning Warning conditions (severity = 4)
- Notification Normal but significant conditions (severity = 5)
- Informational Informational messages (severity = 6)
- Debugging Debugging messages (severity = 7)

Note

The default alert level for the buffered messages is informational, and the default alert level for terminal messages is warning. The default alert level for syslog messages is informational.

Controlling the Size of the Log and Messages

You can set the number of messages that get stored in the history table. By default, messages of the level **warning** and above are stored in the history table even if syslog traps are not enabled. To change level and table size defaults, use the following commands in Configuration mode:

```
ProCurve(config)#logging buffered size <size of buffer>
```

Time-Stamping Messages

By default, the switch time-stamps log messages to enhance real-time debugging and management.

Setting Temperature Thresholds

The management module contains a temperature sensor that monitors temperature on the switch. The sensor generates a Syslog message and an SNMP trap if the temperature exceeds the specified threshold. The default warning and critical temperatures are 72.0 C degrees and 74.0 C degrees respectively. The default shutdown temperature is 78.0 C degrees.

You can use the CLI to specify the warning or critical temperature levels using the following command:

```
ProCurve(config)#set-temperature {warning | critical}  
<temperature>
```

For example:

To set a warning level threshold of 66 degrees, enter:

```
ProCurve(config)#set-temperature warning 66
```

The system will generate a Syslog message and an SNMP trap if the temperature exceeds 66 degrees.

Configuring Port Mirroring

The 8100fl switch allows you to monitor performance and activities of ports on the switch using port mirroring.

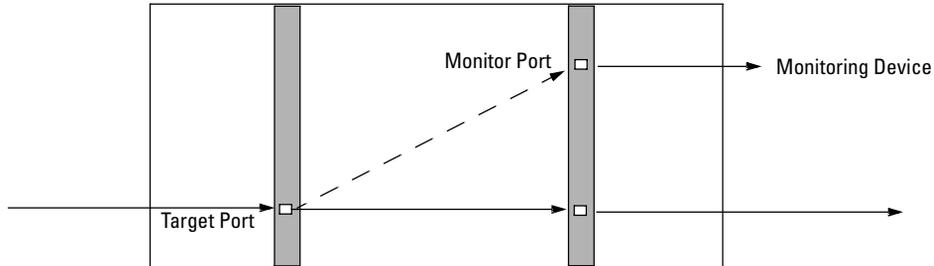


Figure 19-1. Port Mirroring

In [Figure 19-1](#), the target port is mirrored to a port on another interface module. The port to which traffic is mirrored must be activated with the `no shutdown` command and have no other configuration.

The following example shows you how to configure a ten gigabit ethernet port 1 in slot 5 to be a mirror for the traffic on a ten gigabit ethernet port 1 in slot 6.

```
ProCurve(config)#interface ten 5/1
ProCurve(config-if)#mirror monitor-port int ten 6/1
ProCurve(config-if)#no shutdown

ProCurve(config)#interface TenGigabitEthernet6/1
ProCurve(config-if)#no shutdown
```

Port Mirroring Limitations

As you can see from [Figure 19-1](#), port mirroring adds traffic to the switch. To control the impact on performance, consider the following:

- The port to which traffic is mirrored must not be configured.
- Port mirroring can only be done on incoming traffic.
- Incoming traffic that is dropped at the ingress port is not mirrored.
- Only one port per switch can be mirrored at any one time.
- You can mirror a 10G target port to a 1G monitor port, but traffic volume greater than the monitor port can handle is dropped.
- Increase in traffic cuts the bandwidth of the port being mirrored in half.

— *This page is intentionally unused.* —

Command Line Index

This index provides an alphabetical listing of all the commands in the CLI that are referenced in this guide.

A

- aaa accounting ... 5-13, 5-14
- aaa authentication banner ... 4-5, 5-13
- aaa authentication enable default ... 5-11
- aaa authentication fail-message ... 4-5
- aaa authentication login ... 5-11
- aaa authentication password-prompt ... 5-12
- aaa authentication username-prompt ... 5-12
- aaa authorization ... 5-12
- aaa group server radius ... 5-16
- aaa group server tacacs+ ... 5-17
- access-list ... 15-3
- address (ssh) ... 5-8
- aggregator ... 7-3, 7-5
- aggr-mode ... 7-5
- aging (config-vlan) ... 6-5
- area (OSPF) ... 13-6
- arp refresh ... 11-8
- authentication (ospf area) ... 13-8
- authorization (config-line) ... 4-7
- auto-cost (ospf) ... 13-10
- auto-cost reference-bandwidth ... 13-13
- auto-summary (RIP) ... 12-3

B

- bandwidth ... 8-7
- banner login ... 4-5
- banner motd ... 4-5
- boot system ... 3-10
- bridge mac-table aging-time ... 9-31

C

- cd ... 3-5
- ciphers (ssh) ... 5-8
- clear access-list ... 19-6
- clear arp ... 11-8, 19-6
- clear arp-cache ... 11-8, 19-6
- clear bridge mac-table ... 19-6
- clear history ... 19-6

- clear ip ospf ... 13-6, 19-6
- clear ip traffic ... 19-6
- clear l2acl ... 19-6
- clear lacp ... 19-6
- clear logging ... 19-6, 19-9
- clear screen ... 19-6
- clear statistics ... 19-6
- clock set ... 4-4, 17-2
- compatible rfc1583 (ospf) ... 13-10
- configure ... 4-6
- copy ... 3-6

D

- debug aaa ... 19-5
- debug radius ... 19-5
- debug tacacs ... 19-5
- debug vrrp ... 19-5
- default-cost (ospf area) ... 13-8
- delete ... 3-6
- description (config-vlan) ... 6-5
- dir ... 3-6
- disable ... 2-4
- distance (rip) ... 12-4
- distance external (ospf) ... 14-3
- distance internal (ospf) ... 14-3

E

- enable ... 2-4, 4-2
- enable secret ... 2-2, 5-3
- erase ... 3-6
- exec-timeout (config-line) ... 4-7

H

- halt ... 3-12
- hostname ... 1-3, 4-4

I

- image ... 3-10
- interface ... 11-3
- interface mtu ... 11-5
- ip access-group ... 11-4, 15-10
- ip address ... 11-4

- ip broadcast-address ... 11-4
- ip domain-list ... 11-10
- ip domain-lookup ... 11-10
- ip domain-name ... 11-10
- ip domain-name-server ... 11-10
- ip forward-protocol ... 11-11
- ip helper-address ... 11-4, 11-10
- ip igmp snooping vlan ... 10-4
- ip igmp snooping data-driven ... 10-16
- ip igmp snooping enable ... 10-3
- ip igmp snooping fastleave ... 10-13
- ip igmp snooping forcedfastleave ... 10-13
- ip igmp snooping querier ... 10-15
- ip mask-reply ... 11-4
- ip ospf ... 11-4, 13-12
- ip policy route-map ... 11-4
- ip prefix list ... 11-4
- ip proxy-arp ... 11-4
- ip redirects ... 11-4
- ip rip ... 11-4, 12-2
- ip rip authentication mode ... 12-6
- ip rip v2-broadcast ... 12-6
- ip rip version ... 12-6
- ip route ... 14-3
- ip spoofing ... 11-4
- ip table-partition ... 11-13
- ip unreachable ... 11-4

L

- l2acl ... 15-13
- l2acl (config-if) ... 15-14
- l2filter ... 15-13
- lacp ... 7-5
- lacp sys-priority ... 7-5
- lag ... 7-3
- logging ... 19-8
- login-authentication (config-line) ... 4-7

M

- macs (ssh) ... 5-8
- map ... 8-4
- maximum-paths (rip) ... 12-5
- mirror monitor-port ... 19-11
- mkdir ... 3-6
- more ... 3-6
- mtu (config-vlan) ... 6-5

N

- name (config-vlan) ... 6-5
- network (ospf) ... 13-10
- network (rip) ... 12-2, 12-3
- no shut (VLAN) ... 6-6
- no shutdown ... 6-7
- nssa (ospf area) ... 13-8
- ntp server ... 17-3

P

- partner-sys-id ... 7-6
- partner-sys-priority ... 7-6
- passive-interface (ospf) ... 13-14
- passive-interface (rip) ... 12-4
- password (config-line) ... 4-7
- ping ... 11-10
- port (ssh) ... 5-8
- power (ssh) ... 5-8
- power down ... 3-12
- power up ... 3-12
- pwd ... 3-5

R

- range (ospf area) ... 13-7
- redundancy switchover ... 3-12
- reload ... 3-10
- rename ... 3-7
- rmdir ... 3-7
- route-map ... 14-7
- router rip ... 12-2

S

- save startup ... 3-2
- set (config-route-map) ... 14-7
- set module ... 3-11
- set-temperature-threshold ... 19-10
- show aaa method-lists ... 19-2
- show aaa servers ... 19-2
- show access-lists ... 19-2
- show arp ... 11-9, 19-2
- show bootvar ... 19-2
- show bridge fib ... 19-3
- show bridge mac-table ... 19-3
- show clock ... 4-4, 19-3
- show configuration ... 19-3

- show device-logging ... 19-3
- show environment ... 3-14
- show hardware ... 3-13, 19-3
- show history ... 2-9, 19-3
- show images ... 19-3
- show interfaces ... 19-3
- show ip ... 19-3
- show ip arp ... 11-13, 19-3
- show ip igmp snooping config ... 10-6
- show ip igmp snooping group ... 10-7
- show ip igmp snooping vlan config ... 10-6
- show ip interface ... 11-12, 19-3
- show ip ospf ... 11-13, 13-18, 19-3
- show ip prefix-list ... 19-3
- show ip protocols ... 11-13, 19-3
- show ip route ... 19-3
- show ip rxstats ... 11-13, 19-3
- show ip traffic ... 11-13, 19-3
- show l2acl ... 15-14, 19-3
- show l2-vlan-translate ... 19-3
- show lacp ... 7-14, 19-3
- show lag ... 19-3
- show logging ... 19-3, 19-8
- show memory ... 19-3
- show module ... 19-3
- show modules all ... 3-14
- show ntp ... 19-3
- show pingr ... 19-4
- show policy ... 19-4
- show port summary ... 7-10
- show process ... 19-4
- show radius servers ... 19-4
- show redundancy ... 3-12, 19-4
- show reload ... 19-4
- show route-map ... 19-4
- show running-config ... 3-3, 19-4
- show snmp ... 18-3, 18-9, 18-10, 19-2, 19-4
- show spanning-tree ... 9-28
- show spanning-tree instance ... 9-30
- show spanning-tree mst-config ... 9-31
- show spolicy-input-map ... 19-4
- show spolicy-output-map ... 19-4
- show startup-config ... 3-3, 19-4
- show statistics ... 19-2, 19-4
- show stp ... 19-4
- show system-mac ... 19-4
- show tacacs servers ... 5-18, 19-4
- show tech-support ... 19-4

- show terminal ... 2-9, 19-4
- show upgrade-status ... 19-4
- show users ... 5-9, 19-4
- show version ... 3-9, 19-4
- show vlan ... 6-8, 19-4
- show vrrp ... 16-10, 19-4
- show vrrp brief ... 16-10
- shutdown (ssh) ... 5-8
- shutdown (telnet) ... 4-6
- shutdown (vlan) ... 6-6
- snmp chassis-id ... 4-5
- snmp contact ... 4-5
- snmp location ... 4-5
- spanning-tree config-name ... 9-17
- spanning-tree config-revision ... 9-17
- spanning-tree edge-port ... 9-19
- spanning-tree force-version ... 9-18
- spanning-tree hello-time ... 9-18, 9-20
- spanning-tree instance ... 9-22, 9-23, 9-25
- spanning-tree max-hops ... 9-18
- spanning-tree mcheck ... 9-19
- spanning-tree path-cost ... 9-20
- spanning-tree point-to-point-mac ... 9-20
- spanning-tree priority ... 9-20, 9-23, 9-27
- ssh ... 5-8
- stub (ospf area) ... 13-7
- stubhost (ospf area) ... 13-8
- stubnetwork (ospf area) ... 13-7
- summary-filter (ospf area) ... 13-8
- switchport ... 6-4, 6-6

T

- tacacs-server deadline ... 5-17
- tacacs-server host ... 5-17
- tacacs-server key ... 5-17
- tacacs-server single-connect ... 5-17
- tacacs-server timeout ... 5-17
- telnet ... 4-6
- terminal ... 2-9
- timers basic (rip) ... 12-5
- timers spf ... 13-11
- traceroute ... 11-10

U

- username ... 5-5, 5-11

V

- version (rip) ... 12-3
- version (ssh) ... 5-8
- vlan ... 6-5
- vrrp ... 16-3

W

- width (config-line) ... 4-7
- write memory ... 3-3

Index

Numerics

802.1w as a region ... 9-12

A

access modes ... 2-2, 2-4

access port

 changing to trunk port ... 6-7

 standard behavior ... 6-7

accounting ... 5-13

ACLs

 any parameter ... 15-6

 defining rules ... 15-3

 evaluating multiple rules ... 15-6

 implicit deny rule ... 15-6

 layer-2 ... 15-13, 15-14

 layer-3 ... 15-2

 modifying ... 15-9

address filters ... 11-6

address resolution protocol

See ARP

administrative distance ... 12-4

area border router (ABR) ... 13-4, 13-15

ARP

 configuring ... 11-8

 proxy ... 11-9

 refresh intervals ... 11-8

assigning an IP address ... 4-2

authentication

 configuring passwords ... 5-2

 enabling for OSPF area ... 13-8

 interface level (OSPF) ... 13-12

 levels ... 5-11

 MD5 ... 13-12, 14-6

 MD5 and OSPF ... 13-2

 method lists ... 5-11

 routing information ... 14-5

authorization ... 5-12

auto port setting ... 10-3

auto-negotiation ... 4-12

autonomous system border router (ASBR) ... 13-4

B

backing up system configuration ... 3-7

bandwidth loss, spanning tree ... 9-10

bandwidth manager ... 8-2

banner

 authentication ... 5-13

 setting for login ... 4-5

blocked link from STP operation ... 9-10

blocked port

 from IGMP operation ... 10-3

 from STP operation ... 9-9

Boot mode ... 2-4

broadcast storm ... 9-2

C

calculating costs ... 13-10, 13-13

chassis serial number ... 3-13

class map ... 8-2

CLI

 access modes ... 2-2, 2-4

 ambiguous commands ... 2-5

 command prompt ... 2-3, 2-4

 commands

See "[Command Line Index](#)"

 entering commands ... 2-3

 help ... 2-10

 invalid commands ... 2-5

 line-editing commands ... 2-5

 parameter types ... 2-8

 shortcuts ... 2-5

 stopping commands in process ... 2-7

 syntax errors ... 2-5

clock, setting system ... 4-4

command completion ... 2-5

command line interface

See CLI

commands

See "[Command Line Index](#)"

compact flash ... 3-4

configuration ... 9-9

 factory default ... 9-8

 only one session allowed ... 2-2

 spanning tree protocol ... 9-9

configuration file ... 3-2

- Configuration mode ... 2-3, 2-4
- contact person, configuring ... 4-5
- copying files ... 3-6
- cost
 - calculating for OSPF ... 13-10
 - calculating for OSPF interface ... 13-13

D

- date, configuring ... 4-4, 17-2
- debug commands ... 19-5
- default
 - hostname ... 2-4
 - ports in shut mode ... 6-6
 - preference values ... 14-3
 - VLAN ... 6-3
- deleting files ... 3-6
- differentiated class ... 8-5
- directories ... 3-5
- DNS server ... 11-10
- drop probability ... 8-6

E

- editing commands ... 2-5
- encrypting passwords ... 5-3
- equal cost OSPF routes ... 13-3
- error messages ... 19-7
- Exclude Source
 - See* IGMP.
- Exec mode ... 2-4
- export policies ... 14-4

F

- fan status information ... 3-14
- Fast ... 10-10
- file management ... 3-4–3-5
- file systems
 - supported ... 3-4
- files
 - copying ... 3-6
 - deleting ... 3-6
 - displaying contents ... 3-6
 - renaming ... 3-7
- filtering
 - networks in routing updates (RIP) ... 12-5
 - updates (RIP) ... 12-4

- filters
 - effect of IGMP ... 10-17
 - layer-2 ... 11-6, 15-13
 - maximum allowed ... 10-17
 - route ... 14-5
- forwarding information base (FIB) ... 13-3
- forwarding paths ... 8-3
- forwarding port, IGMP ... 10-3

H

- hardware chassis information ... 3-13
- Help ... 2-10
- hostname ... 2-4, 4-4

I

- ICMP ... 11-10
- IGMP
 - benefits ... 10-2
 - configure per VLAN ... 10-3
 - effect on filters ... 10-17
 - Exclude Source ... 10-9
 - Fast Leave ... 10-10
 - Include Source ... 10-9
 - IP multicast address range ... 10-17
 - leave group ... 10-9
 - maximum address count ... 10-17
 - multicast group ... 10-8
 - multimedia ... 10-8
 - operation ... 10-8, 10-9
 - port states ... 10-3
 - query ... 10-9
 - report ... 10-9
 - status ... 10-7
 - Version 3 ... 10-9
- import policies ... 14-3
- Include Source
 - See* IGMP.
- interface configuration mode ... 1-3
- interface types ... 4-9
- IP
 - configuring an interface ... 11-3
 - configuring basic parameters ... 11-10
 - functions on interfaces ... 11-4
 - L3 interfaces ... 6-2
 - supported configurations ... 11-4

- IP address
 - assigning to management module ... 4-2
 - notation ... 2-11
 - setting for a virtual router ... 16-3
- IP multicast
 - address range ... 10-17
 - number of addresses allowed ... 10-17
 - reserved addresses ... 10-17

J

- jumbo frames ... 11-5

L

- L3 interface ... 6-3
- LACP ... 7-4
- LAG ... 7-3
- leave group
 - See* IGMP.
- limiting paths ... 12-5
- link aggregate group
 - See* LAG
- link aggregation
 - configuring ... 7-3–7-7
 - dynamic ... 7-4
 - features ... 7-2
 - monitoring ... 7-10
- link aggregation commands ... 7-5
- link aggregation control protocol
 - See* LACP
- logging ... 19-7
 - displaying messages ... 19-8
 - enabling ... 19-7
 - setting location ... 19-8
- logical interface ... 4-9
- login message ... 4-5
- login prompts ... 5-12
- loop, network ... 9-9

M

- MAC table information ... 19-3
- management module
 - primary and secondary ... 3-11
 - redundancy ... 3-11
 - storage devices ... 3-4
- maximum transmission unit (MTU) ... 11-5

- MD5 authentication ... 13-2, 13-12, 14-6
- memory thresholds ... 11-13
- message logging ... 19-7
- message of the day ... 4-5
- method lists ... 5-11
- MIB modules ... 18-3
 - enabling/disabling ... 18-8
 - loading ... 18-7
 - notifications ... 18-11
 - supported ... 18-6
 - versions and status ... 18-10

modules

- displaying part numbers ... 3-13
- displaying version information ... 3-9
- replacing ... 3-11
- setting administrative states ... 3-11
- showing redundancy status ... 3-12
- viewing status ... 3-14

- MSTI, configuration ... 9-22
- MSTP
 - See* spanning-tree, 802.1s.
- mstp
 - view configuration ... 9-31
- multicast group
 - See* IGMP.
- multimedia
 - See* IGMP.
- multipath support ... 13-3

N

- Network Time Protocol (NTP) ... 17-2, 17-3
- not-so-stubby-area (NSAA) ... 13-3, 13-8

O

- Open Shortest Path First
 - See* OSPF
- OSPF
 - adding a stub network to an area ... 13-7
 - adding stub host to an area ... 13-8
 - areas ... 13-3
 - authentication ... 13-12
 - configuring ... 13-2–13-17
 - configuring areas ... 13-6
 - configuring interfaces ... 13-12
 - default cost for stub area ... 13-8
 - defining cost ... 13-10

OSPF (Continued)

- enabling ... 13-5
- export routes ... 14-5
- importing routes ... 14-4
- monitoring ... 13-18
- multipath ... 13-3
- redistributing into RIP ... 14-9
- router ID ... 13-5
- routes ... 14-9
- setting area parameters ... 13-4
- setting reference bandwidth ... 13-10
- show commands ... 13-18
- specifying interface cost ... 13-13
- summary filter ... 13-8
- types of routes ... 13-4

P

- partial matching ... 2-3, 2-5
- password
 - configuring telnet line access ... 4-7
 - lost password ... 5-6
 - OSPF authentication ... 13-12
 - Telnet access ... 2-2
- passwords
 - configuring ... 5-2
 - encryption ... 5-3
- paths
 - limiting (RIP) ... 12-5
- physical interface ... 4-9
- policy map ... 8-2
- port
 - auto, IGMP ... 10-3
 - blocked by STP operation ... 9-9
 - blocked, IGMP ... 10-3
 - forwarding, IGMP ... 10-3
 - loop ... 9-9
 - redundant path ... 9-9
 - state, IGMP control ... 10-3
- port mirroring ... 19-11
- ports
 - access and trunk ... 6-4
 - adding to a VLAN ... 6-6
 - assigning a VLAN ... 6-2
 - changing from access to trunk ... 6-7
 - configuring an IP interface ... 11-3
 - configuring parameters ... 4-9–4-13
 - modifying speed ... 4-12

- referencing ... 4-9
- shutdown by default ... 6-6
- power supply information ... 3-14
- preference
 - See* route preferences
- privilege levels ... 2-4, 5-4
- Privileged Exec mode ... 2-2, 2-4

Q

- QoS classifier ... 8-3
- query
 - See* IGMP.
- queues ... 8-3

R

- RADIUS
 - configuring ... 5-15–5-16
 - configuring server access ... 5-16
 - monitoring ... 5-16
 - sample configuration ... 5-16
 - security ... 5-15
 - troubleshooting authentication failures ... 5-2
- random detection ... 8-5
- redistributing
 - direct routes ... 14-8
 - routes (RIP) ... 12-5
 - static routes ... 14-8
- redundancy ... 3-11
- redundant path ... 9-9
- region ... 9-8
 - See* spanning-tree, 802.1s.
- report
 - See* IGMP.
- restarting with default factory settings ... 5-7
- restoring system configuration ... 3-7
- revision number ... 9-7
- RFC 1027 ... 11-9
- RFC 1157 ... 18-2
- RFC 1583 ... 13-10
- RFC 1587 ... 13-2
- RFC 1901 ... 18-2
- RFC 1905 ... 18-2
- RFC 1906 ... 18-2
- RFC 2178 ... 14-6
- RFC 2328 ... 13-2
- RFC 2338 ... 16-2, 16-5

- RFC 2576 ... 18-2
- RFC 2863 ... 18-4
- RIP
 - configuring ... 12-2–12-7
 - disabling ... 12-3
 - enabling ... 12-3
 - export routes ... 14-5
 - filtering and suppressing updates ... 12-4
 - importing routes ... 14-4
 - redistribution into OSPF ... 14-9
 - redistribution into RIP ... 14-8
 - route summarization ... 12-3
 - versions supported ... 12-3
- route map ... 14-7
- route preferences ... 14-2
- route redistribution ... 12-5
- route-filter ... 14-5
- router ID ... 13-5
- router, multicast, with IGMP ... 10-8
- routing
 - authentication ... 14-5
 - enabling on a network ... 12-3
 - filtering updates ... 12-4
- Routing Information Protocol
 - See* RIP
- routing policies ... 14-9
- running configuration ... 3-2

S

- SCP ... 3-4, 3-7
- secure copy
 - See* SCP
- secure shell
 - See* SSH
- security
 - configuring RADIUS ... 5-15
 - configuring TACACS+ ... 5-17
 - establishing SSH sessions ... 5-8, 5-10
 - mixing Telnet and SSH sessions ... 5-10
- Simple Network Management Protocol
 - See* SNMP
- slot numbering ... 4-10
- slots, used to specify modules
 - modules
 - referencing ... 4-9
- SNMP
 - access ... 18-3
 - configuring ... 18-2–18-9
 - displaying configuration information ... 18-9
 - enabling and disabling ... 18-5
 - sets ... 18-4
 - troubleshooting ... 18-10
- software
 - checking versions ... 3-9
 - upgrading ... 3-10
- source filtering ... 15-2
- spanning tree
 - 802.1s
 - See* spanning tree, 802.1s.
 - blocked link ... 9-10
 - blocked port ... 9-9
 - broadcast storm ... 9-2
 - enabling MSTP ... 9-27
 - MSTP
 - See* spanning-tree, 802.1s
 - untagged frames ... 6-4
- spanning-tree, 802.1s ... 9-2, 9-4
 - 802.1D and 802.1w connections ... 9-12
 - 802.1D as a region ... 9-6, 9-12
 - 802.1D connection requirement ... 9-20
 - 802.1Q VLANs ... 9-10
 - 802.1s standard-compliant ... 9-4
 - 802.1w as a region ... 9-6
 - active path ... 9-9
 - active paths ... 9-12
 - bandwidth loss ... 9-10
 - benefit ... 9-4
 - blocked traffic ... 9-9
 - boundary port, region ... 9-7, 9-12
 - boundary port, VLAN membership ... 9-9
 - BPDU ... 9-10, 9-15, 9-18, 9-20
 - BPDU requirement ... 9-7
 - BPDU, function ... 9-7
 - bridge ... 9-7
 - bridge, designated for region ... 9-7
 - caution ... 9-7
 - CIST ... 9-12
 - CIST per-port hello time ... 9-12
 - CIST root ... 9-20
 - common and internal spanning tree
 - See* CIST.
 - common spanning tree
 - See* CST.
 - compatibility ... 9-13
 - compatibility mode ... 9-18

- spanning-tree, 802.1s (Continued)
 - configuration ... 9-17, 9-27
 - configuration identifier ... 9-7
 - configuration steps ... 9-15
 - configuration, MST instance ... 9-22
 - configuration, MSTI per-port ... 9-25
 - configuration, port ... 9-19
 - CST ... 9-6, 9-10
 - CST and legacy devices ... 9-10
 - CST, view status ... 9-29
 - default configuration ... 9-8
 - designated bridge ... 9-7, 9-10
 - designated port ... 9-10
 - disabling MSTP ... 9-27
 - display statistics and configuration ... 9-28
 - dynamic VLANs, disallowed ... 9-7
 - edge port ... 9-19
 - enabling MSTP ... 9-27
 - example of multiple topologies ... 9-9
 - fault tolerance ... 9-4
 - force protocol version ... 9-13
 - force-version ... 9-20
 - forwarding paths ... 9-12
 - forwarding state ... 9-19
 - frame duplication and misordering ... 9-13
 - general operation ... 9-2, 9-4
 - hello-time, CIST root, propagated ... 9-12, 9-18
 - hello-time, override ... 9-12
 - hello-time, propagated ... 9-12
 - hop-count decremented ... 9-18
 - instance ... 9-2, 9-12, 9-16
 - instance, forwarding topology ... 9-12
 - instance, IST ... 9-6
 - instance, type ... 9-6
 - internal spanning tree
 - See* IST.
 - interoperating with 802.1D and 802.1w ... 9-6
 - IST
 - IST instance ... 9-6, 9-22
 - IST root ... 9-6, 9-7, 9-9
 - IST, defined ... 9-6
 - IST, switch membership ... 9-6
 - legacy devices and the CST ... 9-10
 - legacy STP and RSTP ... 9-10
 - MIB ... 9-32
 - MST region
 - See* region.
 - MSTI ... 9-7, 9-12
 - MSTI root ... 9-9
 - MSTI, view status ... 9-30
 - MSTP ... 9-7
 - MSTP operation ... 9-8
 - multiple spanning tree instance
 - See* MSTI
 - override hello-time ... 9-12
 - path cost, effect on 802.1D ... 9-13
 - per-VLAN STP ... 9-4
 - planning ... 9-13
 - port connectivity ... 9-19
 - port states ... 9-9, 9-12
 - priority resolution ... 9-24
 - priority, device ... 9-15, 9-23
 - priority, IST port ... 9-27
 - priority, MSTI port ... 9-26
 - rapid state transitions ... 9-13
 - redundant links ... 9-10
 - region ... 9-2, 9-5, 9-7
 - region name ... 9-7, 9-17
 - region root switch ... 9-6
 - region, configuration name ... 9-32
 - region, Configuration Revision number ... 9-32
 - region, defined ... 9-7
 - region, root bridge ... 9-6
 - region, RSTP bridge ... 9-12
 - region, switch configuration ... 9-11
 - region, switch excluded ... 9-32
 - region, VLAN assignments ... 9-7
 - regional boundary port ... 9-7
 - regional root bridge per-instance ... 9-10
 - regional root switch, configuration ... 9-12
 - regions, communication between ... 9-12
 - root bridge per-instance ... 9-10
 - root bridge per-region ... 9-6
 - root port per-instance ... 9-10
 - root switch, instance ... 9-24
 - root switch, IST instance ... 9-6
 - root switch, MST instance ... 9-11
 - root switch, regional ... 9-12
 - root, CIST ... 9-18
 - root, IST ... 9-7
 - root, MSTI ... 9-9
 - routed traffic in a region ... 9-9
 - RSTP as a region ... 9-5
 - RSTP BPDU requirement ... 9-7
 - RSTP bridge ... 9-12
 - rules for operation ... 9-11

- spanning-tree, 802.1s (Continued)
 - separate forwarding paths ... 9-6
 - show commands ... 9-28
 - SNMP MIB ... 9-32
 - STP as a region ... 9-5
 - switch excluded from region ... 9-32
 - topology between regions ... 9-8
 - trunk, root, per-instance ... 9-10
 - trunked link example ... 9-11
 - types of MST instances ... 9-6
 - view mstp configuration ... 9-31
 - VLAN assignments, region ... 9-7, 9-11
 - VLAN membership, region ... 9-11
 - VLAN, change instance ... 9-16
 - VLAN, configuration error ... 9-32
 - VLAN, connectivity between regions ... 9-12
 - VLAN, duplicate or missing packets ... 9-32
 - VLAN, instance assigned ... 9-8, 9-11, 9-23
 - with legacy STP and RSTP ... 9-5
- special policy
 - input commands ... 8-4
 - output mode ... 8-4
- SSH
 - combining with Telnet sessions ... 5-10
 - configuring ... 5-8–5-10
 - server commands and parameters ... 5-8
- startup-config ... 3-2
- static routes ... 13-3, 14-3, 14-8
- stub area network ... 13-7
- subnet ... 10-9
- system configuration
 - backup and restore ... 3-7
 - basics ... 4-2
 - changing ... 3-3
 - converting to local time zone ... 17-2
 - date and time ... 4-4
 - displaying ... 3-3
 - displaying SNMP information ... 18-9
 - hostname ... 4-4
 - show commands ... 19-2

T

- TACACS+
 - authentication ... 5-2
 - configuring ... 5-17
 - monitoring ... 5-18
 - multiple connections on a single server ... 5-17

- sample configuration ... 5-18
- TCP, enabling multiple connections ... 5-17
- Telnet
 - combining with SSH connections ... 5-10
 - enabling remote access ... 4-2
 - opening a connection ... 4-6
 - sessions supported ... 2-2
- temperature information ... 3-14
- temperature thresholds ... 19-10
- terminal display settings ... 2-9
- terminal lines
 - configuring parameters for ... 4-6
- terminating sessions ... 2-11
- TFTP ... 3-4
- thresholds for temperature, fan, and voltage ... 3-14
- time zone ... 17-2
- time, configuring ... 4-4, 17-2
- Trivial File Transfer Protocol
 - See* TFTP
- troubleshooting
 - bypassing bad startup configuration ... 5-7
 - debug commands ... 19-5
 - error reports and logging ... 19-7
 - lost password ... 5-6
- trunk ports ... 6-4, 6-6
- trunk, spanning-tree example ... 9-11

U

- unicast routing ... 11-2
- upgrading system software ... 3-10

V

- version information ... 3-9
- virtual link ... 13-9
- virtual router redundancy protocol
 - See* VRRP
- VLAN

- adding ports ... 6-6
- applying layer-2 ACLs ... 15-14
- configuring ... 6-5
- configuring an IP interface ... 11-3
- default ... 6-6
- enabled by default ... 6-6
- enabling trunk ports ... 6-4
- explicit and implicit ... 6-3
- IGMP configuration ... 10-3

VLAN (Continued)

- number of VLANs supported ... 6-6
- port-based ... 6-2
- static, 802.1s spanning tree ... 9-6
- trunk ports ... 6-6, 6-7

VRRP

- configuring ... 16-2–16-9
- monitoring ... 16-10
- symmetrical configuration ... 16-8

W

weighted random early detection

See WRED

WRED ... 8-2, 8-5, 8-7

— *This page is intentionally unused.* —



Technical information in this document is subject to change without notice.

© Copyright Hewlett-Packard Development Company, L.P.
All rights reserved. Reproduction, adaptation, or translation without prior written permission is prohibited except as allowed under the copyright laws.

February 2006

Manual Part Number
5990-8867